



The MIBIS Manual

PREPARING RECORDS IN MICROCOMPUTER-BASED BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS

S E C O N D E D I T I O N

Anne Di Lauro and Ed Brandon

The MIBIS Manual

Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based
Bibliographic Information Systems

Anne Di Lauro
and
Ed Brandon

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE
Ottawa • Cairo • Dakar • Johannesburg • Montevideo • Nairobi • New Delhi • Singapore

Published by the International Development Research Centre
PO Box 8500, Ottawa, Ontario, Canada K1G 3H9

First edition
© International Development Research Centre 1990

Second edition
© International Development Research Centre 1995

Di Lauro, A.
Brandon, E.

The MIBIS manual : preparing records in microcomputer-based bibliographic information systems (2nd edition). Ottawa, Ont., IDRC, 1995. ix + 353 p. : ill.

/Cataloguing/, /information recording/, /information analysis/, /microcomputers/, /information systems/ — /systems design/, /computer programs/, /data bases/, /style manuals/.

UDC: 025.315:681.3.06

ISBN: 0-88936-728-0

A microfiche edition is available.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the International Development Research Centre.

IDRC Books endeavours to produce environmentally friendly publications. All paper used is recycled as well as recyclable. All inks and coatings are vegetable-based products.

CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS	vi
FOREWORD	vii
FOREWORD TO THE SECOND EDITION	ix
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL	1
INTRODUCTION	3
LIST OF FIELDS	13
INPUT SHEET	17
FIELD-BY-FIELD GUIDE	19
ANNEXES	
1. Guidelines for personal author names	131
2. Corporate Name Authority File rules	148
3. Guide to subject indexing and retrieval	165
4. Serials Authority File rules	174
5. Guidelines for entering place names	181
6. Guide to managing acquisitions fields	183
7. Abbreviations of names of months	186
8. Language codes	187
9. Names of governments in the language of the government	188
10. ISO two-letter country codes	195
11. Abbreviations of state and province names	198
12. Acronyms to be used in corporate body fields	199
13. Comparison with <i>Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems</i>	206
14. Correspondence with the Common Communication Format	211
15. Glossary	216
16. Bibliography	220
17. Sample completed input sheets	223
18. Data exchange procedures in a formal information network	241
19. Implementation using MICRO-ISIS with sample printed outputs	242
20. Implementation using INMAGIC	318
INDEX	341
DISKETTE CONTAINING SAMPLE MICRO-ISIS AND INMAGIC APPLICATIONS	

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I wish to thank all those who helped in the preparation of the manual. My special thanks go to:

- Maureen Sly, of the Centre's Library, and Ed Brandon, of the Information Sciences and Systems Division, who followed the manual closely from start to finish, providing invaluable support, comments, and suggestions;
- The OECD Development Centre in Paris, for permission to base material in this manual on work already carried out for the IDIN Manual; and for giving me the opportunity to learn from the experiences of the IDIN group;
- Giampaolo Del Bigio, chief of the Unesco Division of Software Development and Applications, for permission to use Mini-micro CDS/ISIS; and
- In Florence, the Servizio Regionale per i Beni Librari, Regione Toscana, for permission to use its collection of works on librarianship, and for inviting me to participate in its meetings and courses for Mini-micro CDS/ISIS users.

Anne Di Lauro

FOREWORD

Since its creation in 1970, the International Development Research Centre (IDRC) has maintained a major program in Information Sciences. Through the projects that it supports, the Information Sciences Division seeks:

- to build indigenous capacity within developing countries to manage information and promote its use;
- to improve systems, services, and tools for managing and using information relevant to development research and change; and
- to encourage cooperation and information sharing.

Support is given to information activities in the areas reflecting the priorities of developing countries.

In the early years of its program, when awareness of information issues and the infrastructure to support information activities were weak in most developing countries, IDRC emphasized international and regional information systems as vehicles to promote models for building up local capacities and capabilities. This served as a means to facilitate information exchange, especially of information produced by developing countries themselves. IDRC was a key player in the establishment of a number of such development-information systems and models.

In 1981, IDRC hosted a Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, which was attended by representatives from the information units of the United Nations regional economic commissions, the Information Systems Unit of the United Nations Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, the Arab League, and the Bangladesh Institute of Development Studies. The participants agreed on a model record structure and field-by-field guidelines, based on their previous experience with development-information systems. They recommended that IDRC publish a manual incorporating the recommendations of the meeting, as well as guidelines related to authority files, indexing, and thesauri.

This resulted in the collection entitled *Recommended Methods for Development-Information Systems*. The first volume, *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems* (IDRC-TS40e), contained guidelines for the structure and content of bibliographic records and was published in 1982. Volume two, *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems* (IDRC-TS52e), was issued in 1984. It was originally envisaged that the Recommended Methods collection would have a third volume dealing with indexing and thesaurus construction. In the years since 1981, the need for this has been met to some degree by the emergence of a number of publications dealing with these subjects.

The *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems* provided a model structure for information systems using mainframe or minicomputer technology in their automation, and has been widely used by the development-information community as a basis upon which guidelines for a number of information groups (regional networks, sectoral information systems) have been developed. However, since its publication, several developments have taken place that have led to the preparation of this companion volume.

Microcomputers are being increasingly used for bibliographic applications in the developing world. A number of software packages have been designed that are suitable for microcomputer-based bibliographic systems. As well, the capacity of microcomputers has increased to allow them to handle the special needs of bibliographic applications. This has contributed to a growing demand for assistance and advice in adapting microcomputer software packages to the needs of documentation centres and information networks in developing countries. This interest has originated from all sectors, and has not been limited to "development information" per se.

Over the years, a number of manuals and record structures have been developed to meet the needs of particular documentation centres and information systems that have adopted microcomputer technology. Recently, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) Development Centre, in its capacity as the technical focal point of the International Development Information Network (IDIN), contracted a consultant, Anne Di Lauro, to develop a bibliographic record structure and manual to be used by the IDIN participants. The result was the *IDIN Manual for the Creation and Management of a Bibliographic Data Base using MICRO-ISIS*. Although the *IDIN Manual* was written to respond to the needs of the IDIN network, IDRC felt that some of its content was of potential interest to a wider user community and could be helpful for any individual or organization establishing a bibliographic-information system using a microcomputer.

This idea provided the basis for the present manual, *Manual for Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based Bibliographic Information Systems* (MIBIS).

Anne Di Lauro is well qualified to write this manual. As well as writing the *IDIN Manual*, she provided technical input to the *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems* (MPRDIS) and was coauthor of *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*.

Readers will recognize the design and philosophy of MIBIS as being similar to that of MPRDIS. In addition, the present manual has been strongly influenced by the *IDIN Manual*, and in this regard, IDRC gratefully acknowledges the contribution of the OECD Development Centre. MIBIS is compatible with the *Common Communication Format* (CCF) and has taken into account the widespread use of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2) in developing countries.

MIBIS is not limited to information systems in any particular discipline nor to users of particular microcomputer software. It has used Unesco's CDS/ISIS Mini-Micro Version 3.07 (hereafter referred to as MICRO-ISIS) as the "example" software for the proposed record structure, and also includes an annex on how the structure can be implemented on a second software package, INMAGIC.

The main part of MIBIS is a field-by-field guide containing rules for the selection and entry of data using the proposed record structure. Annexes include examples of completed input sheets, guidelines for building various types of authority files, guidelines for indexing and subject retrieval, a guide for acquisitions applications, data exchange procedures in a network, and details on implementations using MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC with sample outputs. A diskette containing the MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC record structures and supporting files, as well as a sample database, has also been included.

MIBIS is a generalized manual to be used by a wide audience, ranging from users of stand-alone systems to participants in international information networks. It is not intended to replace, but to complement, other manuals currently in existence. It can be used partially or in its entirety, depending on the needs of the particular user or information community. MIBIS is intended to be comprehensive but not overly complicated, and should not be daunting even to first-time users of microcomputer-based systems. Indeed, with the growing use of microcomputers for information management at all levels, it is hoped that MIBIS may assist these new users in making good use of the technology now in their hands, based on the experience of many others who have come before them.

Martha B. Stone
Director
Information Sciences Division
International Development Research Centre

FOREWORD TO THE SECOND EDITION

This manual, first published in 1990, has proven to be a useful tool to guide managers of libraries and documentation centres in automating their operations. It has also served as a resource for courses on the use of MICRO-ISIS in libraries. An indication of its popularity is that the full print run of the first edition was distributed in less than 3 years.

During this time, several developments have taken place causing the manual to require updating. The software packages used, MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC, now exist in newer and more powerful versions; the political map of the world has changed considerably; and a new edition of the *Macrothesaurus* has been published. In addition, readers and users of this manual have offered suggestions for improvement. This second edition reflects these developments.

Minor changes were made to take advantage of new features in version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS, while more substantive changes were made to annex 20 to reflect the new structure of INMAGIC Plus, the updated version of INMAGIC. Care has been taken to ensure complete compatibility with the original design. Those who have developed applications based on the first edition can continue to use these systems¹. They may wish to update some of the display formats and reports with those provided on the diskette accompanying this second edition.

Country names and codes have been updated to include the latest information available from the ISO 3166 Maintenance Agency Secretariat in Berlin.

The *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development* has been modified and expanded, resulting in the publication of a fourth edition². As required, descriptors found in the text of the manual, and those in the sample database have been updated to use terms in the new edition.

The major updates are:

- addition of a field for accession number;
- improved display format for bibliographic records;
- redesign of purchase order and order claim reports; and
- addition of tables for Heurisko, a new search interface for MICRO-ISIS.

¹ For INMAGIC applications, five field labels have been changed. Refer to **Annex 19, Section III — Installation on your microcomputer** for information on converting your application.

² *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*. 4th ed. Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1991.

Macrothesaurus para el Procesamiento de la Información relativa al Desarrollo Económico y Social. 4a ed. Paris, Organización de Cooperación y Desarrollo Económicos, 1991.

Macrothesaurus pour le traitement de l'information relative au développement économique et social. 4^e éd. Paris, Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques, 1991.

HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

- ☛ First, read the **Introduction**, which is essential to an understanding of the background and rationale of the database design.
- ☛ Then, look at the **List of Fields** and the **Field-by-Field Guide**, which are the core of the manual. They are both arranged numerically by field tag.

The **Annexes** are an important adjunct to the Field-by-Field Guide, providing detailed rules and information that apply to more than one field.

The **Index** provides another access point to the information in the text.

- ☛ Then, decide how you will implement the manual by reading the section below on **Options** and answering the questions it asks.

OPTIONS

Because the aim of the manual is to provide a database design that can be applied to a variety of situations, from stand-alone information systems to participants in a formal information network, it includes all of the data elements and rules that any documentation centre might need. Individual documentation centres might need to use all of the fields and subfields and rules provided in the manual, or only some.

Optional rules are provided for some fields in the **Field-by-Field Guide** and in some of the annexes. They are clearly marked “OPTION”.

Optional fields are identified in the **List of Fields** on pages 13–16. In the column titled “Use”, the letters E (Essential), M (Mandatory), and O (Optional) indicate those fields and subfields that should be used by all documentation centres and those that should only be adopted if needed by a particular documentation centre.

Fields marked as being **Essential** must be entered in each bibliographic record.

Fields marked as being **Mandatory** should be defined by all documentation centres, but data is only entered in these fields if the information required applies to the item being catalogued.

Individual documentation centres may choose which of the **Optional** fields they wish to adopt. Fields that are optional in this manual may be defined as essential or mandatory in a particular information system.

Here are some questions to help in deciding which of the optional fields and rules should be adopted in any one particular system.

- ☛ Is your system a **multilingual** one? If so, pay special attention to:

Introduction, Section 6 — Language of analysis

Annex 2 — Options provided for language of the name of the government

Annex 3 — Section on multilingual thesaurus searching

Annex 5 — Options provided for language of place names

- ☛ Are you a member of an **information network**? If so, pay special attention to:
 - Introduction, Section 9 — Information networks*
 - Annex 18 — Data exchange procedures in a formal information network*
 - Field-by-field guide — fields 001 to 003*

- ☛ Are you interested in using **computerized authority records**? If so, pay special attention to:
 - Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records*
 - Annex 2 — Corporate Name Authority File rules*
 - Annex 4 — Serial Authority File rules*
 - Annex 6 — Guide to managing acquisitions fields*

- ☛ Are you interested in using the database for managing **acquisitions**? If so, study:
 - Annex 6 — Guide to managing acquisitions fields*
 - Field-by-field guide — fields 500 to 517*

INTRODUCTION

This manual has been prepared to provide a tool for libraries and documentation centres setting out, probably without the benefit of previous experience, to computerize their bibliographic information systems using a microcomputer.

The manual is based on experience gained in the course of projects to assist microcomputer-based information systems — specifically, the International Development Information Network (IDIN)³, supported by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) Development Centre, and several projects supported by IDRC.

The manual includes:

- a database design, in the form of a list of fields for the description and management of the items in the database. The database design aims to be as complete as possible, presenting all of the data elements that any information system might need. Individual information systems might need all of the elements, or only some;
- a set of rules for the content of the fields;
- guidelines on how the database may be used for information management, retrieval, and dissemination; and
- guidelines on the operation of the system within the context of an information network.

1. INFLUENCES ON THE DATABASE DESIGN

The hub of a bibliographic information system is the bibliographic database. The database is made up of bibliographic records, each of which describes a bibliographic item (a book, a report, a periodical article, a thesis, etc.). The information in the database is used for information retrieval; for producing printed catalogues, indexes, bibliographies, and current awareness bulletins; for controlling such operations as acquisitions and budgeting; and for keeping statistics.

There are two main aspects of database design:

- 1) The structure of the bibliographic record, i.e., the manner in which the information in the record is divided into fields and subfields; and
- 2) The content of the bibliographic record, i.e., the form of data to be entered in each field.

The database design in the present manual represents a natural development of the design and philosophy put forward in *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems*⁴ (MPRDIS). That manual presented a design based on minicomputer technology and was written specifically for documentation centres participating in information systems of the

³ The members of IDIN comprise the documentation centres of the five regional development associations that meet under the umbrella of the Inter-Regional Co-ordinating Committee of Development Associations (ICCDA). These are the Association of Development Research and Training Institutes of Asia and the Pacific (ADIPA), the Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social (AICARDES), the Consejo Latinoamericano de Ciencias Sociales (CLACSO), the Council for the Development of Economic and Social Research in Africa (CODESRIA), and the European Association of Development Research and Training Institutes (EADI).

⁴ Morin-Labatut, Gisèle, and Sly, Maureen. *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems*. Ottawa, International Development Research Centre, 1982. (IDRC-TS40e)

DEVSIIS-type (Development Sciences Information System). Since its publication, however, two developments have led to the need for a companion volume.

First, the capacity of microcomputers to handle bibliographic information systems has increased, thus giving more documentation centres than ever before the opportunity to computerize their operations.

Second, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (Unesco) published the *Common Communication Format*⁵ (CCF), which proposes a common method for structuring bibliographic records so that they may be freely exchanged among different information systems.

Thus, the design presented in this manual differs from MPRDIS in the following ways:

- 1) The sample implementation is based on a microcomputer software package (MICRO-ISIS⁶) instead of on a minicomputer software package (MINISIS⁷).
- 2) Some minor changes to the database design have been introduced to facilitate the manipulation of data using currently available microcomputer software.
- 3) More practical guidance is given to assist users who may be managing a computerized system for the first time, including:
 - fields for the management of acquisitions,
 - an annex on subject indexing and retrieval in a computerized system,
 - guidelines for the use of computerized authority records,
 - in the **Field-by-Field Guide**, system-manager notes providing guidance on the manipulation and use of some of the fields,
 - sample printed outputs, and
 - a diskette containing a sample application.
- 4) A small number of changes have been introduced to make the bibliographic record structure more compatible with the CCF, within the limits of MICRO-ISIS.
- 5) Some minor changes to the cataloguing rules have been introduced to bring them closer to the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*⁸.
- 6) Although the present manual provides guidance on the operation of a bibliographic information system within a network, it is not aimed specifically at DEVSIIS-type operations.

■ A detailed chart of the differences between MPRDIS and the present manual is given in **Annex 13**.

⁵ Simmons, Peter, and Hopkinson, Alan, eds. *CCF: the Common Communication Format*. 2nd ed. Paris, Unesco, 1988. (PGI-88/WS/2)

⁶ MICRO-ISIS is the term used throughout this manual for Unesco's software CDS/ISIS Mini-Micro Version 3.07.

⁷ MINISIS, a generalized information management system developed, disseminated, and supported by IDRC. It operates on the Hewlett-Packard 3000 Series of minicomputers.

⁸ *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed. Chicago, American Library Association, 1978.

2. MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE

The manual is intended to be used with any microcomputer software designed for database management, and containing the features required to fulfill the needs of a bibliographic information system, including the ability to:

- handle relatively long, variable-length fields,
- handle relatively large databases,
- retrieve and sort records using any desired data element, and
- print records in any desired form.

Annex 20 shows how the system may be implemented using the software package INMAGIC-PLUS. However, the software package chosen to illustrate the implementation of the system is MICRO-ISIS (Version 3.07). This is a generalized information storage and retrieval system designed at Unesco and is most commonly used on an IBM or IBM-compatible microcomputer. It contains many of the features of the mainframe version of CDS/ISIS.

The minimum hardware requirements to run MICRO-ISIS are:

- 1 IBM PC/XT microcomputer or a compatible machine,
- 512k RAM memory (640k recommended for some applications),
- 1 hard disk,
- 1 floppy disk drive,
- 1 monitor, and
- 1 printer.

MICRO-ISIS allows you to:

- define a database,
- enter new records in the database,
- modify or delete existing records,
- build and maintain inverted files for information retrieval,
- retrieve information using Boolean logic,
- sort records into alphabetical order to create catalogues and indexes,
- print and display the records using your own specifications, and
- exchange data with other systems in ISO 2709 format.⁹

Features of MICRO-ISIS include:

- fields are variable length,
- data may be entered in both upper and lower case letters, and diacriticals (i.e., accents) may be entered,
- subfields are indicated through the use of embedded subfield delimiters,
- fields may be repeatable,

⁹ International Organization for Standardization. *Format for Bibliographic Information Interchange on Magnetic Tape*. Geneva, ISO, 1981. (ISO 2709-1981)

- filing order may be changed through the use of special characters. (This means, for instance, that an article at the beginning of a title can be ignored when the title field is being sorted to create a title index; and a title beginning with a digit may be filed as if the number were written as a word.),
- several indexing techniques are available for creating inverted files,
- data may be retrieved by using inverted files or by searching the whole database sequentially (also called “free-text searching”), and
- data may be extracted from an alternative record in the database for printing or displaying.

The address for inquiries concerning MICRO-ISIS is:

Mr Giampaolo Del Bigio,
Division of Software Development and Applications
Unesco
7 Place de Fontenoy
75700 Paris, France

MICRO-ISIS is distributed as a standard package providing all of its functions and features to the end-user. It also includes a feature that allows special applications to be written using an internal programming language. The design proposed in this manual is based on the standard version. However, on the accompanying diskette, some specially written programs have been provided to facilitate some of the options.

3. RELATION TO THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

The record structure proposed in this manual is compatible with that of the Common Communication Format (CCF), and all the **mandatory** fields for the CCF have been included. However, it is not an implementation of the CCF in its pure form. The CCF uses a sophisticated system of links and segments to handle the relationship between bibliographic levels. The current standard version of MICRO-ISIS cannot handle links and segments directly, and this manual retains the two-level record structure of MPRDIS.

The design in this manual also differs from the CCF in other ways:

- no attempt has been made to use the same field tags as in the CCF,
- some fields have been included that are not in the CCF, and some of the optional CCF fields have not been included,
- indicators have not been used, and
- for some fields, fewer subfields have been provided.

✎ For users wishing to exchange data with other systems via the CCF, a correspondence table between this manual and the CCF is given in **Annex 14**.

4. RULES FOR BIBLIOGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION

The second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2), which incorporates the provisions of the ISBDs (International Standard Bibliographic Description), is used and respected in many countries. For this reason, the rules for bibliographic description in the manual adhere as closely as possible to AACR2.

Strict adherence to AACR2, however, may not necessarily be desirable in a computerized information system. For example, in a computerized system, the concept of main entry need no longer apply because the items can be retrieved, or appear in an index, under any element in the record.

The rules for bibliographic description in this manual differ from the AACR2 rules in the following ways:

- 1) No rules are supplied for the selection of main entry and added entry headings. However, if a main entry heading is desired, it can be generated by instructing the system, when sorting, to look first for the first personal author. If there is no personal author, choose the first conference name. If there is no conference, choose the first corporate author, and if there is no corporate author, choose the title.
- 2) The statement of responsibility is replaced by fields for personal author and corporate author, entered in heading form to serve as access points to the record.
- 3) The rules for corporate authors are slightly different from those in AACR2 (explained in **Annex 2, Section II — Rules for Names of Corporate Bodies**).
- 4) To take advantage of the increased retrieval possibilities that computerized information systems offer, some fields, such as Meeting(s) (114) and Thesis (141), are structured in such a way as to make them more accessible for retrieval purposes.

5. BIBLIOGRAPHIC LEVEL

The term bibliographic level is used to indicate where the item being catalogued stands in a set of hierarchical relationships. Four different types of bibliographic items have been identified. These are:

- A Analytic.** An item that is not issued separately but as part of a parent item, such as a chapter from a book, a paper from a set of conference papers bound together, or an article from a periodical.
- M Monograph.** An item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map. A monograph may either stand alone or be part of a collection or of a series.
- C Collection.** An item issued in two or more physical pieces, either at the same time or over a predetermined period, that is complete in its own right, such as a multivolume encyclopedia.

- S Serial.** A publication issued in successive parts and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, an annual, or a monographic series.

In this manual, provision is made for describing items at up to two levels. **Field 007** is used for recording the bibliographic level of the item being catalogued, and **field 008** is used, if applicable, for recording the bibliographic level of the parent item. The possible combinations of bibliographic level are:

AM — Part of a monograph

Examples

A conference paper published as part of the proceedings of a conference

A chapter of a book

AS — Part of a single issue of a serial

Examples

An article from a periodical

A contribution from a yearbook

M — A monograph

Examples

A book

A single-volume report

A single-volume thesis

A map

A tape/slide show

A film

C — A collection

Examples

A multivolume encyclopedia

A two-volume report

MC — A monograph that is part of a collection

Example

Volume 1 of a two-volume report

Note A separate record is created for each volume in a collection only if the individual volumes have different titles, or are by different authors or cover different subject matter.

AC — A chapter from a collection

Example

A chapter from a two-volume report, the separate volumes of which have not been given individual treatment.

MS — A monograph that is part of a serial

Example

A monograph that belongs to a monographic series

CS — A collection that is part of a serial

Example

A collection that belongs to a monographic series

Because this manual does not include guidelines for establishing a database for managing a serials collection, the serial level (S) is never used on its own.

6. LANGUAGE OF ANALYSIS

The term “language of analysis” has been used throughout the manual to mean the language of the system chosen for recording information such as the notes, the descriptors, and the abstract.

In a **unilingual system**, the language of analysis is the language of the system, i.e., the language of the users of the system.

In a **multilingual system**, a choice will have to be made as to the language of analysis for each item. The choice will usually depend on the language of the item being described.

As a general rule, in a multilingual system, if the language, or one of the languages, of the item being catalogued is one of the languages of the system, then that language will be the language of analysis.

Examples

1. If the languages of the system are English and French, and the item being catalogued is in French, then the language of analysis will be French.
2. If the languages of the system are English and French and the item being catalogued is a bilingual text in Indonesian and English, then the language of analysis will be English.

If the item being catalogued is not written in one of the languages of the system, then the language of analysis may be any one of the languages of the system. Individual documentation centres may decide to establish their own guidelines for choosing the language of analysis in such cases.

7. INDEXING VOCABULARY

To illustrate the use of a thesaurus for subject indexing and retrieval in a computerized system, the *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*¹⁰ has been used. The *Macrothesaurus* is trilingual with separate English, French,¹¹ and Spanish¹² versions. The first two editions were published in 1972 and 1978 by the OECD. The third edition was published in 1985 in New York by the United Nations. The current edition, the fourth, was again published by the OECD in 1991.

8. COMPUTERIZED AUTHORITY RECORDS

The manual recommends the use of authority files for certain data elements, especially for names of corporate bodies. For these fields, and in the relevant annexes, the option has been provided to use either manual authority files (in the form of a card file), or computerized authority records.

The use of computerized authority records allows a short code to be entered into the appropriate field of the bibliographic record instead of the full information required in that field. Whenever the bibliographic record is displayed, sorted, or printed, the full information, stored in the authority record, appears in the record instead of the code (that is, the appropriate field from the authority record appears instead of the field in the bibliographic record).

In MICRO-ISIS, the authority records must be in the same database as the bibliographic records. The authority code entered in the relevant field of the bibliographic record may be simply the Master File Number (MFN) of the authority record, or a short alphabetic code. If the authority code is the MFN of the authority record, the link is made directly using the REF function of the CDS/ISIS formatting language. If the authority code is a string of alphabetic characters, the link to the authority record is made through the inverted file, using the L and REF functions of the CDS/ISIS formatting language.

The advantage of using authority files in this way is that the name only needs to be entered into the system once, thus saving time, reducing the possibility of error, and ensuring consistency. If the name needs to be changed, only one record needs to be changed — the authority file record. The uses and advantages of computerized authority files are discussed fully in *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*.¹³

The option of using computerized authority records has been provided for:

¹⁰ *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*. 4th ed. Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1991.

¹¹ *Macrothesaurus pour le traitement de l'information relative au développement économique et social*. 4^e éd. Paris, Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques, 1991.

¹² *Macrothesaurus para el Procesamiento de la Información relativa al Desarrollo Económico y Social*. 4a ed. Paris, Organización de Cooperación y Desarrollo Económicos, 1991.

¹³ Di Lauro, Anne, and Sly, Maureen. *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*. Ottawa, International Development Research Centre, 1985. (IDRC-TS52e)

1) All of the fields containing corporate bodies, that is,

- **111** Corporate author(s),
- **112** Affiliation,
- **113** Other associated institution(s), and
- **211** Corporate author(s) — parent.

2) Fields containing a serial title, that is:

- **140** Monographic series, and
- **200/201** Title of serial and ISSN.

3) The supplier field (**515**) used for acquisitions.

In these fields, an optional **subfield z** has been provided for the entry of the authority code.

In systems that have computerized authority records linked to these fields, only the appropriate authority code will be entered in the field.

In systems that are not using computerized authority records linked to the fields (i.e., systems using manual authority files), the complete information will be entered in the field.

Using the same technique, computerized authority records for personal author names, project titles, and meetings could also be created.

Whether individual centres decide to use authority records, and for which data elements, will depend on their own needs and on the amount of computer storage capacity available to them.

9. INFORMATION NETWORKS

As in MPRDIS, this manual provides for the needs of documentation centres participating in information networks, by including fields and rules intended to facilitate exchange of data.

Three kinds of situations are envisaged:

- 1) The **stand-alone information system** that does not participate in a network.
- 2) The **informal network** in which there is no centralized database, but in which the participants agree to use certain common tools to facilitate the informal exchange of data. The participants will use a common indexing vocabulary and probably a common database design and cataloguing rules. If it is a multilingual network, the participants will either have available in their subject a suitable multilingual thesaurus or will agree to use a common language for indexing. An example of this kind of network is IDIN (International Development Information Network).
- 3) The **formal information network**, or cooperative information system, in which participants send their data on a diskette to a coordinating centre, which merges the data into a common

database and disseminates the information in the form of abstracting and indexing publications, specialized bibliographies, on-line search services, and other products. Such a network will require its participants to adhere closely to a common database design and a common set of rules for bibliographic description. If it is a multilingual network, participants will need to use not only a common indexing vocabulary, but also special rules for the language of place names and names of governments used in corporate bodies.

Throughout the manual, options are provided to accommodate all three situations.

For example, three fields are provided to facilitate the management of data within a network: **001** — Participating centre acronym, **002** — Participating centre record number, and **003** — Record status. Participants in a formal network need all three of these fields. Members of an informal network require **fields 001 and 002**, but not **003**. A stand-alone system does not require any of these fields.

✎ **Annex 18** provides guidelines for the practical management of data exchange in a formal network.

LIST OF FIELDS

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Repeat- able	Length	Use ¹⁴	Inver- sion ¹⁵
Master File Number (MFN)						
NETWORKING FIELDS						
001	Participating centre acronym			10	O	0
002	Participating centre record number			6	O	
003	Record status			1	O	0
CORE BIBLIOGRAPHIC FIELDS						
005	Date record entered			10	E	0
006	Date record changed			10	O	
007	Bibliographic level			1	E	0
008	Bibliographic level — parent			1	M	0
009	Country of origin			2	O	0
010	Record number of parent			6	O	
011	Record number(s) of part(s)		R	6	O	
012	Record number(s) of other language version(s)		R	6	O	
020	Language of analysis			2	O	
021	Language(s) of text		R	2	E	0
022	Language(s) of summaries		R	2	O	
100	Title			500	E	4
101	Parallel title(s)		R	500	M	4

¹⁴ Use:

- E = Essential (must be present in all records);
- M = Mandatory (must be entered if it applies to the item in hand);
- O = Optional (but may be E or M for individual systems).

¹⁵ Indexing techniques for inversion:

- 0 = whole field or subfield;
- 2 = descriptors between triangular brackets;
- 4 = words.

Fields selected for inversion are suggestions only. Individual systems may select fields for inversion according to their requirements.

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Repeat- able	Length	Use	Inver- sion
102	Translated title — English			500	O	
103	Translated title — French			500	O	
104	Translated title — Spanish			500	O	
105	Translated title — other language			500	O	
110	Personal author(s)	a Personal author b Role	R	80	M	^a 0
111	Corporate author(s)	a Main body b Sub-body c Place d Country code z Authority code	R	500	M M M M O	^a 4 ^b 4 ^c 0 ^d 0 ^z 0
112	Affiliation	a Main body b Sub-body c Place d Country code z Authority code		500	O	^a 4 ^b 4 ^c 0 ^d 0 ^z 0
113	Other associated institution(s)	a Main body b Sub-body c Place d Country code e Role z Authority code	R	500	M M M M M O	^a 4 ^b 4 ^c 0 ^d 0 ^z 0
114	Meeting(s)	a Meeting name and number b Place c Country code d Dates e Date — ISO form	R	500	M M M M O	^a 4 ^b 0 ^c 0 ^e 0
120	Edition			25	M	
121	Publisher	a Publication place b Publisher c Country code		250	M	
122	Date of publication /issue — free form			30	E	
123	Date of publication /issue — ISO form			10	E	0
130	Collation (M/C)	a Number of pages/ pieces b Description c Dimensions		40	M	

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Repeat-able	Length	Use	Inver-sion
131	Part statement	a Volume/issue no. b Pagination of part		40	M	
140	Monographic series	a Series title b Series part z Authority code	R	200	M M O	^a 4 ^z 0
141	Thesis	a Thesis designation b Degree c Course d Number		200	O	
142	Project(s)	a Project name b Project number	R	200	O	^a 4 ^b 0
150	Notes			700	O	
160	ISBN(s)		R	13	M	
161	Document number(s)		R	50	M	0
162	Availability			100	O	
FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM						
200	Title of serial	z Authority code ¹⁶		400	M O	
201	ISSN			9	M	
202	Title of parent (M/C)			500	M	
210	Personal author(s) — parent	a Personal author b Role	R	80	M	
211	Corporate author(s) — parent	a Main body b Sub-body c Place d Country code z Authority code	R	500	M M M M O	
SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS						
300	Primary descriptors			200	E	² 17
301	Secondary descriptors			400	M	2
302	Geographic descriptors			200	M	2
303	Local descriptors			200	O	2
304	Proposed descriptors			100	O	2
310	Abstract			1000	O	
320	Broad subject heading			100	O	0

¹⁶ Subfielded only if option to use computerized authority records for serial titles is adopted. Otherwise, not subfielded.

¹⁷ See **Field-by-Field Guide**, field 300, System manager note 2.

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Repeat- able	Length	Use	Inver- sion
LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS						
400	Processing status			4	E	0
410	Location(s)		R	10	O	0
411	Call number			40	M	
412	Number of copies			2	M	
413	Accession number(s)		R	10	M	
420	Type of material			4	O	0
430	Documentalist(s)		R	10	O	
ACQUISITIONS FIELDS						
500	Acquisition type			4	O	0
510	Date ordered			10	O	0
511	Date claimed		R	10	O	0
512	Date received			10	O	0
513	Number of copies ordered			2	O	
514	Requester(s)		R	25	O	0
515	Supplier	a Supplier name b Address — line 1 c Address — line 2 d Address — line 3 e Country z Supplier code		200	O	^a 4 ^z 0
516	Price	a Price b Currency		20	O	
517	Acquisition notes			200	O	
999	Record type			1	O ¹⁸	0

¹⁸ Essential if computerized authority records are included in the database.

INPUT SHEET

MFN

005 Date record entered		Bib level: 007 008		009 Country of origin	
<div> <div>010 <u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent</div> <div>011 Parts</div> <div>012 Other lang</div> </div>					
<div> <div>020 <u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis</div> <div>021 Text</div> <div>022 Summaries</div> </div>					
100 Title					
101 Parallel title(s)					
10- Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110 Personal author(s)					
111 Corporate author(s)					
112 Affiliation					
113 Other assoc instit(s)					
114 Meeting(s)					
120 Edition					
121 Publisher					
122 Date — free form			123 Date — ISO form		
130 Collation (M/C)			131 Part		
140 Mono series					
141 Thesis					
142 Project(s)					
150 Notes					

INPUT SHEET

page 2

160 ISBN(s)	161 Doc no(s)
162 Availability	

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200 Title of serial
201 ISSN
202 Title of parent (M/C)
210 Personal author(s) — parent
211 Corporate author(s) — parent

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300 Primary descriptors	
301 Secondary descriptors	
302 Geographic descriptors	
303 Local descriptors	
304 Proposed descriptors	
310 Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320 Broad subject	

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400 Processing status	410 Location(s)
411 Call no	412 No of copies
413 Accession no(s)	
420 Type of material	430 Documentalist(s)

The field-by-field guide is the main section of the manual. It describes each of the fields in the database, and is arranged in field tag order.

THE INPUT SHEET

On pages 17–18, the input sheet is reproduced. It provides a visual presentation of the fields. The input sheet should be filled out completely by documentalists who are learning to use the system. Those who are experienced enough to enter data directly on-line should use the input sheet for recording information gathered before they begin a data input session — for example, the correct form of corporate author or personal author name, the call number, and subject descriptors. The Master File Number (MFN) should be written in the space provided on top of the input sheet, and the input sheets should be kept for a defined period as a backup to the system.

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Each field is described under four headings — **Characteristics**, **Purpose**, **Selection**, and **Data entry**.

When applicable, there are also **Definitions**, as well as **System manager notes**, which give guidance on the manipulation of the field using MICRO-ISIS.

For some fields, **Options** have been provided to allow for the needs of different kinds of information systems. Most of the options are related to the use of computerized authority records, and to the special needs of multilingual information systems.

Characteristics

- Essential, mandatory, or optional:

Essential means that the field must be entered in every record.

Mandatory means that the field must be entered if it is applicable to the item being catalogued. For example, if the item is an article from a periodical, the serial title must be entered.

Optional means that the documentation centre may decide whether this field is applicable to its own situation or not. For example, if the documentation centre has decided not to computerize the processing of acquisitions, it does not need to enter the fields provided for this purpose.

- Repeatable or Not repeatable:

Repeatable means that the field may have more than one occurrence. For example, the personal author field may contain more than one personal author. In repeatable fields, the occurrences are separated by a percentage sign.

Not repeatable means that the field may contain only one occurrence, for example, collation, date of publication/issue.

- Subfielded or Not subfielded:

Subfielded means that the information entered in the field is divided into separate elements. This allows the elements to be treated differently when the field is being sorted or printed. For example, the conference field may be sorted by the country or by the city in which the conference was held because these elements are in separate subfields.

Each element to be considered as a subfield is preceded by a subfield delimiter in the form of a circumflex accent and a letter of the alphabet, for example, ^a.

Not subfielded means the field is not divided into separate elements, for example, the title field.

- Maximum length:

Maximum length of the field is the maximum number of characters allowed for each occurrence of the field, including subfields, subfield delimiters, punctuation, and spaces, but excluding the percentage sign used to separate the occurrences.

Purpose

This section describes the intended use of the field.

Selection

This section gives guidance in choosing the information that is to be entered in the field.

Data entry

This section shows how the information is to be entered in the field, including rules for capitalization and punctuation.

GENERAL GUIDE TO DATA ENTRY

In MICRO-ISIS:

- 1) Data can only be entered and modified using the screen worksheet (one or more of these will have been created at the time the database was defined).
- 2) You should not press the **[Enter]** (or **[Carriage return]**) key until you have finished typing the field. Once you have pressed **[Enter]**, the cursor will automatically move to the beginning of the next field.
- 3) The occurrences of a repeatable field are separated by a percentage sign. No spaces are entered before or after the percentage sign.

Example

En%Es%Fr

- 4) The subfields in a subfielded field are preceded by subfield delimiters consisting of a circumflex accent and either a letter of the alphabet or a numeral. The letters may be in either

upper case or lower case. In this manual, letters of the alphabet are used, and they are always shown in lower case.

Example

`^a`

No space is entered before or after the subfield delimiter.

Example

`^aBrowning, Robert^bed.`

The subfield delimiters do not appear in the record when it is printed or displayed for the user.

- 5) A repeatable subfielded field is entered using both the percentage sign and subfield delimiters.

Example

`^aEliot, Thomas^bcomp.%^aDevereux, James^bed.`

In MICRO-ISIS, the Master File Number (MFN) is the record number, i.e., a number assigned to each record in the database. It provides a unique identification for each record.

The MFN is assigned automatically by the system when the record is entered into the database.

Write the MFN in the space provided at the top of the input sheet.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential for participants in a network)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres either exchange machine-readable records or contribute them to a centralized database, **field 001** is used to identify the centre that created the record. Normally, the centre is identified by its acronym.

Example

CODESRIA

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically when the record is copied to be sent to another system. **Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.**

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. This field should not appear on the MICRO-ISIS data entry worksheet.
2. This field should be created in the reformatting FST when exporting data using the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential for participants in a network)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres either exchange machine-readable records or contribute them to a centralized database, **field 002** is used to hold the record number of the item in the originating centre's database.

This is necessary because new record numbers will be assigned to the records once they are imported into another system.

DATA ENTRY

The field contains the Master File Number (MFN) of the record in the originating centre's database.

Example

512

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically when the record is copied to be sent to another system. **Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.**

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. This field should not appear on the MICRO-ISIS data entry worksheet.
2. This field should be created in the reformatting FST when exporting data using the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential in a network with a centralized database)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded


Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres contribute records to a centralized database, **field 003** is used by the participating centre to enter a code showing whether the record is a new record or a record that has already been submitted.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. If the record is **new**, and is to be submitted to the coordinating centre, enter the code **N**.
2. Once the record has been **submitted** to the coordinating centre, change the code to **S**.

 For further information on the data exchange procedures in a network with a centralized database, see **Annex 18**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 005 is used to record the date on which the item was first entered into the database.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the current date in the form YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY stands for the year, MM for the month, and DD for the day.

Example

For 24th June, 1988

Enter: 1988-06-24

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 006 is used to enter the date on which the record was last changed.

DATA ENTRY

If the record is being changed, enter the current date in the form YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY stands for the year, MM for the month, and DD for the day.

Example

For 11th July, 1988

Enter: 1988-07-11

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

Field 007 is used to enter a code indicating the bibliographic level of the item being catalogued. This information is necessary when records are being exported to a system with a different record format. The information can also be used in on-line retrieval to limit the search to a particular kind of document.

At the same time, the level of the parent item, if applicable, is entered in **field 008** — Bibliographic level — parent.

DEFINITION

The term bibliographic level refers to the position of the item being catalogued in a set of hierarchical relationships.

The following are the possible bibliographic levels:

- A **Analytic** — Refers to an item that is not issued alone but as part of a larger work, such as an article from a periodical, a chapter from a book, or a paper from a set of conference papers issued as a single entity.
- M **Monographic** — Refers to an item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map. It may also be one volume of a multivolume work.
- C **Collective** — Refers to a multivolume work, composed of a finite number of volumes, issued either at the same time or over a period, such as a two-volume report or a multivolume encyclopedia.
- S **Serial** — Refers to an item that is issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing a chronological and/or numerical designation, and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, a yearbook, or a monographic series.

Note As this manual does not include guidelines for establishing a database for managing a serials collection, the serial level (S) is never entered in **field 007**.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

The following are the possible entries in **fields 007 and 008**:

Level		Examples
007:	A	a chapter from a book
008:	M	a paper in a volume of conference proceedings a map from a report
007:	A	a chapter from a collection (when the separate volumes of the collection have not been given individual treatment)
008:	C	
007:	A	an article from a periodical
008:	S	
007:	M	a book
008:	(empty)	a single-volume report a single-volume thesis a film a single-volume manual a cassette
007:	M	a volume of a multivolume encyclopedia
008:	C	a volume of a two-volume report
007:	M	a monograph that is part of a monographic series
008:	S	
007:	C	a multivolume work catalogued as a single item
008:	(empty)	
007:	C	a multivolume work that is part of a monographic series
008:	S	

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is part of a larger work, **field 008** is used to enter the bibliographic level of the parent item.

This field is only used in conjunction with **field 007**.

DEFINITION, SELECTION, AND DATA ENTRY

See **field 007**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 009 is used to indicate the country from which the item originated. It is used to retrieve information on the countries of origin of items in the database.

SELECTION

1. When the item is published, select the country of publication, as entered in **field 121, subfield c** — Publisher country code.
2. When the item is an article from a periodical, enter the country in which the periodical is published.
3. When the item is unpublished, enter the country in which it was produced.

Examples

The item is a monograph published simultaneously in Canada and the United Kingdom. Canada has been selected for entry in **field 121**. Select Canada as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an article from the periodical *Economic and political weekly*, which is published in India. Select India as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an unpublished report produced in Senegal as part of a project sponsored by the United Nations Development Programme in New York. Select Senegal as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an unpublished conference paper prepared in the Netherlands for a conference held in Bogotá, Colombia. Select the Netherlands as the country of origin of the item.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**) corresponding to the country of origin of the item.

Example

CA

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is part of a monograph or part of a collection (with bibliographic level AM, AC, or MC), **field 010** is used to enter the Master File Number (MFN) of the parent item. This information facilitates the tracing of related records, if the records need to be updated or deleted.

In the record for the parent, the MFN for the part will be entered in **field 011**.

Note Because this manual does not include provision for the creation of records for serials management, this field is not entered when the parent is a serial (bibliographic levels MS, CS, or AS).

DATA ENTRY

Enter the MFN of the parent.

Example

The item is a chapter from a book. The MFN of the record for the book is 1298.

Enter: 1298

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a monograph or a collection from which a part has been selected for treatment as an analytic, or a collection from which a single volume has been selected for treatment as a monograph, **field 011** is used to enter the MFN(s) of the part(s). This information facilitates the tracing of related records, if the records need to be updated or deleted.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the MFN of each part, separated by a percentage sign.

Example

The item is a book from which each of the nine chapters has been selected for separate treatment as an analytic. The records for the analytics have MFNs 1299 to 1307 inclusive.

Enter: 1299%1300%1301%1302%1303%1304%1305%1306%1307

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

When more than one language version of a work is being catalogued, **field 012** is used to enter the MFN(s) of the records for the other language version(s). This information facilitates the retrieval of other language versions of the item.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the MFN of the other language version. If there is more than one MFN to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

The system has obtained a report in three languages — English, French, and Spanish. A separate record has been created for each language version with MFNs 3101 (for the English version), 3102 (for the French version), and 3103 (for the Spanish version).

For the English version, enter: 3102%3103

For the French version, enter: 3101%3103

For the Spanish version, enter: 3101%3102

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential in a multilingual system)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 020 is used to record the language of analysis, that is, the language of the system chosen to enter such elements as the notes, the abstract, and the descriptors.

SELECTION**Option 1: unilingual system**

In a unilingual system, the language of analysis is the language of the system, i.e., the language of the users of the system.

Example

The text of the item is in English. The language of the system is Spanish. The language of analysis is therefore Spanish.

Option 2: multilingual system

1. If the language, or one of the languages, of the item is one of the languages of the system, select that language as the language of analysis.

Example

The languages of the system are French and English. The item is in French, therefore the language of analysis is French.

2. If the item is not written in one of the languages of the system, individual documentation centres may establish their own rules for choosing which of the languages of the system should be the language of analysis.

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: unilingual system**

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically at the time the record is copied to be sent to another system. (See **System manager note** below.)

Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.

Option 2: multilingual system

Enter the appropriate two-letter language code (selected from the list in **Annex 8**).

Example

Fr

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. For a unilingual system, this field should not appear on the data entry worksheet.
2. Whenever records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, create this field, containing the language code corresponding to the language of the system, in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 021 is used to enter the language or languages in which the item is written. It is used when a user wishes to retrieve only items in particular languages.

SELECTION

Do not enter languages in which only a summary or abstract of the text appears. Enter these languages in **field 022** — Language(s) of summaries.

Example

The item is written in Dutch with summaries in English and French. Enter the language code for Dutch in **field 021**.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the appropriate language code from **Annex 8**. When there is more than one language, separate the codes with a percentage sign.

Example

En%Fr%Es

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

When the item contains summaries or abstracts of its contents in languages other than the language of the main text, **field 022** is used to enter the language(s) of the summaries.

SELECTION

Do not enter the language of the summary if it is the same as the language of the text.

Example

The item is written in Spanish with summaries in Spanish and English. Enter only the English language code in **field 022**.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the appropriate language code from **Annex 8**. If there is more than one language, separate the codes with a percentage sign.

Example

En%Fr

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 100 is used to enter the title and subtitle of the item in hand, whether it be a monograph, a collection, or an analytic.

SELECTION

1. Enter the title that is found on the title page of the item.
2. If there is no title page, select the title from the cover, half title page, spine, or other part of the item. If the title is cited in different ways on these parts of the item, choose the title by which it is most likely to be known.
3. If there are several language versions of the title, choose one language version for **field 100** and enter the other language versions in **field 101** — Parallel title(s). Choose, in order of preference:
 - the language of analysis,
 - the language best understood by the users, or
 - the title cited first on the title page, or title page substitute.

Examples

The item is written in Spanish and has titles in Spanish, English, and French. The language of analysis is English. Choose the English title.

The item is written in Chinese and has titles in Chinese and English. The language of analysis is French. Choose the English title.

The item has text and titles in German, Dutch, and Italian. The language of analysis is English. The German title appears first on the title page. Choose the German title.

4. If the item has no title, supply one in the language of analysis. The fact that the title is supplied is indicated by the fact that it is enclosed in square brackets (see paragraph 10 under **Data entry**).

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the selected title as it appears on the item.
2. Correct obvious typographical errors.

3. Capitalize the first letter of the title and of other words in the title that would normally be capitalized in the language involved (proper nouns in English, all nouns in German, etc.). Also capitalize the first letter of all significant words in the names of meetings, projects, and corporate bodies in the title.
4. Separate the title from the subtitle with a space colon space (:). Precede a supplement or a section with a period and a space.
5. Do not enter a period at the end of the title unless the last word is an abbreviation. However, enter other punctuation that may appear at the end of the title, such as a question mark or an exclamation mark.
6. Do not enter periods or spaces within an acronym.
7. Do not enter the hyphen in hyphenated words unless the two parts of the word can stand alone as separate words. (This is necessary because, when inverting words, MICRO-ISIS treats a hyphen as a word boundary.)

Examples

Enter: co-ordination as coordination
inter-regional as interregional

But retain the hyphen in:
North-South
round-table.

8. If the title begins with an article (“a”, “an”, “the”, and their equivalents in other languages), enclose the article in triangular brackets < >. This device is used in MICRO-ISIS to allow the article to be ignored in an alphabetical title list. The triangular brackets do not appear in printed output.
9. If the only title on the item is in a non-Roman script, transliterate it according to the appropriate ISO standard for transliteration.¹⁹
10. If the title has been supplied by the documentalist because the item itself was lacking a title, enclose the supplied title in square brackets. Enclose each square bracket in triangular brackets: <[> <]>. This device ensures that the square brackets will be ignored when the title is included in an alphabetical title list. The triangular brackets will not appear in printed output. (See last example below.)
11. If the title is unusually long, it may be abridged. Do not, however, omit words at the beginning of the title. Indicate omissions by inserting three dots.
12. If the title requires additional words to make it more meaningful, enclose the additions in square brackets. In this case, it is not necessary to enclose the square brackets in triangular brackets. (Do not add words at the beginning of the title.)

¹⁹ Standards for the transliteration of Arabic, Chinese, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, and Japanese are listed in the bibliography under the International Organization for Standardization.

Examples

Canada and the Third World : what are the choices?

Is it tomorrow yet? : handbook for the educators of the very young

<El> petróleo y el desarrollo en Bolivia

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs

Sociétés japonaises de commerce général : leur rôle dans le développement économique

Population projections of Bangladesh 1975-2025 : under assumptions of decreasing fertility and decreasing mortality (df-dm) and constant fertility and decreasing mortality (cf-dm)

International Symposium on Pastures in the Tropics and Subtropics : proceedings of a symposium on tropical agriculture research

Crise alimentaire en Afrique tropicale : le défi de l'IITA

Activities of the Advisory Committee on Science and Technology for Development

Pricing, subsidies, and related policies in food and agriculture

Consideration of the reports of the 1983 panels of the Advisory Committee : reinforcement of linkages between research and development activities and the production system : report of the Ad Hoc Panel of Specialists ...

Report on NHSCP [National Household Survey Capability Programme] study. Supplement 1

Consultant's report [on management control systems]

<[>Thatch : a bibliography<]>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the FST for the inverted file, **fields 100 and 101** have both been assigned the field identifier 100. To retrieve a title regardless of which of these two fields it is in, use field identifier 100.

Example

To retrieve the title Tesauro OIT, use the search expression:

TESAURO (F) OIT/(100)

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the same title appears on the item in more than one language, **field 101** is used to enter the language versions not selected for entry in **field 100** — Title.

SELECTION

Select each of the language versions of the title not entered in **field 100**.

Option

Ignore titles in non-Roman scripts.

DATA ENTRY

1. Follow the rules for data entry under **field 100**.
2. If there is more than one title to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

Field 100: ILO thesaurus : labour, employment and training terminology

Field 101: Thésaurus BIT : terminologie du travail, de l'emploi et de la formation%Tesauro OIT : terminología de trabajo, empleo y formación

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the display format, **field 101** is printed directly after **field 100**, and a space equals sign space (=) is supplied in front of each occurrence of **field 101** (ISBD and AACR2 punctuation).

Example

ILO thesaurus : labour, employment and training terminology = Thésaurus BIT : terminologie du travail, de l'emploi et de la formation = Tesauro OIT : terminología de trabajo, empleo y formación

2. In the FST for the inverted file, **fields 100** and **101** have both been assigned the field identifier 100. To retrieve a title regardless of which of these two fields it is in, use field identifier 100.

Example

To retrieve the title Tesauro OIT, use the search expression:

TESAURO (F) OIT/(100)

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in English)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, **field 102** is used when the language of analysis is English and the title entered in **field 100** — Title is in a language other than English.

SELECTION

1. If an English translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in **field 100** (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under **field 100**), and **field 102** will be left empty.
2. If an English translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in **field 102**.
3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Example 1

The item is written in Arabic and has titles in Arabic and English. The language of analysis is English, and the English title has been selected for entry in **field 100**.

Do not enter anything in **field 102**.

Example 2

The item is written in Dutch. In a subsequent volume issued by the same organization, a preface in English has been supplied that cites the title of its predecessor in English. The language of analysis is English.

Enter the Dutch title in **field 100** and the English translation in **field 102**:

Field 100: Ontwikkelingsgericht onderzoek : een inventarisatie van Nederlands maatschappijwetenschappelijk onderzoek met betrekking tot ontwikkelingslanden en de ontwikkelingsproblematiek

Field 102: Development-related research : an inventory of Dutch social science research on developing countries and their development problems

Example 3

The item is written in French. The language of analysis is English.

Enter the French title in **field 100** and translate the title into English and enter the translation in **field 102**:

Field 100: Production agricole des femmes et les conditions de leur intégration dans les coopératives du Niger

Field 102: Agricultural production by women and the conditions of their integration into the cooperatives of Niger

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under **field 100**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in French)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, **field 103** is used when the language of analysis is French and the title entered in **field 100** — Title is in a language other than French.

SELECTION

1. If a French translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in **field 100** (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under **field 100**), and **field 103** will be left empty.
2. If a French translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in **field 103**.
3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Examples

The item is written in Arabic and has titles in Arabic and French. The language of analysis is French, and the French title has been selected for entry in **field 100**.

Do not enter anything in **field 103**.

The item is written in Portuguese. A letter accompanying the item gives its title in French. Enter this title in **field 103**.

Field 100: Cabo Verde : classes sociaux, estrutura familiar

Field 103: Cap Vert : classes sociales, structure familiale

The item is written in English. The language of analysis is French.

Enter the English title in **field 100**, translate the title into French, and enter the translation in **field 103**.

Field 100: Rural China today

Field 103: <La> Chine rurale aujourd'hui

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under **field 100**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in Spanish)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, **field 104** is used when the language of analysis is Spanish and the title entered in **field 100** — Title is in a language other than Spanish.

SELECTION

1. If a Spanish translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in **field 100** (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under **field 100**), and **field 104** will be left empty.
2. If a Spanish translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in **field 104**.
3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Examples

The item is written in English and has titles in English and Spanish. The language of analysis is Spanish, and the Spanish title has been selected for entry in **field 100**.

Do not enter anything in **field 104**.

The item is written in Portuguese. The language of analysis is Spanish. Enter the Portuguese title in **field 100**, translate the title into Spanish, and enter the translation in **field 104**.

Field 100: Cabo Verde : classes sociais, estrutura familiar, migrações

Field 104: Cabo Verde : classes sociales, estructura familiar, migraciones

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under **field 100**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in the language of the system, when this is not English, French, or Spanish)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, **field 105** is used when the title entered in **field 100** — Title is in a language other than the language of analysis, and when the language of analysis is neither English, French, nor Spanish.

SELECTION

Follow the guidelines for selection under **fields 102 to 104**.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under **field 100**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded ^a Personal author
 ^b Role

Maximum length 80

PURPOSE

Field 110 is used to enter the name of the person or persons responsible for the intellectual content of the work, and, when the person is the editor or the compiler, the relationship of the person to the work.

SELECTION

1. Enter the name of each author, editor, or compiler.
2. Do not select the names of translators or illustrators, unless the item is likely to be looked for under these names.
3. Do not select the names of persons responsible only for the foreword or the preface.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the names in the order in which they appear on the item.
2. Enter the subfields in the form:
 ^aPersonal author^brole
3. When there is more than one author, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

 ^aBlake, William^bed.%^aArnold, Matthew^bed.

Subfield a: personal author

1. If you are using a personal name authority file, enter the name as it is found in the authority file.
2. If the name is not in the authority file, or if you are not using an authority file, follow the rules in **Annex 1: Guidelines for personal author names**.

3. Precede each personal author name with the subfield delimiter ^a.

Examples

^aMcKenzie, Robert J.
^aWoh, Ho Suh
^aAl-Tayyeb, M.A.
^aPalmer, Ingrid
^aSaint-Gérard, Yolande

Subfield b: role

1. Enter the role only if the person is an editor or a compiler.
2. Enter the abbreviations ed. or comp.
3. Precede the role with the subfield delimiter ^b.

Examples

^aMorales-Gomez, María^bed.
^aFortunato, Francesca^bcomp.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded **Either** ^a Main body **or** ^z Authority code
 ^b Sub-body
 ^c Place
 ^d Country code

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 111 is used to enter the name of each corporate body that has intellectual responsibility for the item.

Note 1 Corporate bodies that only sponsored or funded the work are not entered here, but in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).

Note 2 Names of meetings, conferences, workshops, etc. are not entered here, but in **field 114** — Meeting(s).

Note 3 Names of projects are not entered here, but in **field 142** — Project(s).

Note 4 For guidance on retrieval on **fields 111** to **113**, see **System manager note** below.

SELECTION

1. Enter each body that is cited on the item as having intellectual responsibility for the work.
2. Do not enter the names of bodies that only published, sponsored, or funded the work.
3. If there is a doubt as to role of the body cited on the work, enter it in **field 111** rather than in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).
4. If the name of the body is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
 - the language of analysis, then
 - the language of the item.
5. If the name of the body has changed, select the name used by the body at the time the item was published or issued.

Example 1

The item is a study by the United Nations Population Division. The preface states that the work was funded by the United Nations Fund for Population Activities (UNFPA).

Field 111: UN. Population Division

Field 113: UNFPA

Example 2

At the top of the title page of the item are printed the names of two government ministries. Their relationship to the work is not stated. Enter both bodies in **field 111**.

Example 3

The item is a directory written by the OECD Development Centre. The text is in both English and French, and the organization's name appears on the item in its official languages — English and French. The language of analysis is French.

Field 111: OCDE. Centre de Développement

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File**

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., in the form of a card index), enter the corporate body as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the corporate body in the form:
^aMain body^bSub-body^cPlace^dCountry code
3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter **subfield b**. (See example 3 below.)
4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in **subfield b**. Separate the sub-bodies in **subfield b** with a period and a space. (See example 4 below.)

Note The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in **subfield c**. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in **Annex 5**.

Exception Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in **subfield d** the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**), corresponding to the country where the body is located.

7. If more than one body is to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. (See example 5 below.)

Example 1

^aUniversity of Dar-es-Salaam^bTraditional Medicine Research
Unit^cDar-es-Salaam^dTZ

Example 2

^aGambia. Ministry of Agriculture and Natural
Resources^bDepartment of Animal Husbandry^dGM

Example 3

^aUniversité d'Abidjan^cAbidjan^dCI

Example 4

^aOECD^bDevelopment Centre. External Cooperation
Sector^cParis^dFR

Example 5

^aInternational Institute of Tropical Agriculture^cIbadan
^dNG%^aUniversity of Ife^bInstitute of Agricultural Research and
Training^cIbadan^dNG

Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in **Annex 2**, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in **subfield z**. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the body in **field 111** in the form:
^zAuthority code
3. If more than one body is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

^z1039
^z223%^z2606

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the FST for the inverted file, **fields 111, 112, and 113** have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.

Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor, or funder, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)

Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

Note It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to **Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion**).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in **fields 111, 112, 113, or 211**. Refer to **Annex 19, Section V — Display formats** for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.

Optional

Not repeatable

Not repeatable

Subfielded	Either	^a Main body	or	^z Authority code
		^b Sub-body		
		^c Place		
		^d Country code		

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 112 is used to enter the name of the institution where the author of the item works. It is often useful to be able to contact the author of an article or a paper directly to obtain a copy of the work. If there is more than one personal author, only the affiliation of the first-named author is entered.

SELECTION

1. Enter only one affiliation in **field 112**. If there is more than one author, enter the affiliation of the first-named author.
2. Do not enter affiliation if it is the same as the corporate author entered in **fields 111** or **211**, or the same as the body entered in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).
3. If the name of the affiliation is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
 - the language of analysis, then
 - the language of the item.

Example 1

The item is a journal article. The author's normal place of work is the Institut Africain de Développement Economique et de Planification.

Enter the Institut Africain de Développement Economique et de Planification in **field 112.**

Example 2

The item is a conference paper written jointly by two authors. The affiliation of the first named author is the International Planned Parenthood Federation (IPPF) and that of the second author is the United Nations Population Division.

Enter the IPPF in field 112.

Example 3

The item is a chapter from a monograph. The author's normal place of work is the OECD, which is also the corporate author of the monograph. The OECD is entered in **field 211** — Corporate author(s) — parent.

Do not enter anything in the affiliation field.

Example 4

The item is the proceedings of a conference sponsored by the IDRC and edited by a staff member of the IDRC. The editor is entered as the personal author. IDRC is entered in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).

Do not enter anything in the affiliation field.

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File**

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., one in the form of a card index), enter the affiliation as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the affiliation in the form:
^aMain body^bSub-body^cPlace^dCountry code
3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter **subfield b**. (See example 3 below.)
4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in **subfield b**. Separate the sub-bodies in **subfield b** with a period and a space.

Note The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in **subfield c**. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in **Annex 5**.

Exception Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in **subfield d** the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**), corresponding to the country where the body is located.

Examples

^aUniversity of Michigan^bCenter for Research in Economic Development^cAnn Arbor, MI^dUS

^aMaroc. Ministère de l'Agriculture et de la Réforme Agraire^dMA

^aDeutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit^cEschborn^dDE

Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in **Annex 2**, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in **subfield z**. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the body in **field 112** in the form:

^zAuthority code

Example

^z2256

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the FST for the inverted file, **fields 111, 112, and 113** have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.

Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor, or funder, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)

Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

Note It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to **Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion**).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in **fields 111, 112, 113, or 211**. Refer to **Annex 19, Section V — Display formats** for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.

Mandatory

Repeatability

Subfielded	Either <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code ^e Role 	or <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ^z Authority code ^e Role
------------	--	--

Maximum length 500

Field 113 is used to enter the names of corporate bodies that:

- funded the work, for example, the funder of a project or meeting,
- sponsored the work, for example, the organizer of a meeting, or
- granted the degree for which a thesis was written.

SELECTION

1. Do not enter in **field 113** a body that has already been entered as corporate author in **fields 111** or **211** (example 2).
2. Enter each of the bodies cited as having one of the three roles listed under purpose above.
3. When the item is the report of a conference, enter the sponsor or funder of the conference. However, if the item is a paper presented at the conference, do not enter the sponsor or funder of the conference (example 3).
4. If the name of the body appears on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
 - the language of analysis, then
 - the language of the item.

Example 1

The item is a report of a project funded by the UNDP. It is written by an expert attached to the United Nations Statistical Office. The author of the report is entered in **field 110** — Personal author; the UN. Statistical Office is entered in **field 112** — Affiliation; the UNDP is entered as funding institution in **field 113**.

Example 2

The item is a report, written by the FAO, of a meeting that was sponsored by the FAO. The FAO is entered as corporate author in **field 111**. It is, therefore, not entered in **field 113**.

Example 3

The item is a paper presented by a researcher attached to the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization at a conference sponsored by the FAO.

The author of the report is entered in **field 110** — Personal author; the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization is entered in **field 112** — Affiliation. Nothing is entered in **field 113**.

Example 4

The item is a Ph.D. thesis presented to Harvard University. Enter Harvard University in **field 113**.

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File**

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., in the form of a card index), enter the corporate body as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the body in the form:
^aMain body^bSub-body^cPlace^dCountry code^eRole
3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter **subfield b**. (See example 3 below.)
4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in **subfield b**. Separate the sub-bodies in **subfield b** with a period and a space.

Note The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in **subfield c**. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in **Annex 5**.

Exception Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in **subfield d** the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**), corresponding to the country where the body is located.
7. In **subfield e**, enter one of the following roles (or their equivalents in the language of analysis):
 - ^eFunder
 - ^eSponsor
 - ^eDegree granting inst.

8. If more than one body is to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. If two or more bodies have the same role, enter the role for each body. (See example 4 below.)

Example 1

^aUniversité de Clermont I^bCentre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur
le Développement International^cClermont-Ferrand^dFR^eSponsor

Example 2

^aMali. Ministère de l'Agriculture^dML^eSponsor

Example 3

^aUNDP^cNew York, NY^dUS^eFunder

Example 4

^aFAO^cRoma^dIT^eSponsor%^aIAEA^cWien^dAT^eSponsor

Example 5

^aHarvard University^cCambridge, MA^dUS^eDegree granting inst.

Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in **Annex 2**, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in **subfield z**. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in **Annex 2**.
2. Enter the body in **field 113** in the form:
^zAuthority code^eRole
3. In **subfield e**, enter one of the following roles (or their equivalents in the language of analysis):
^eFunder
^eSponsor
^eDegree granting inst.
4. If more than one body is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. If two or more bodies have the same role, enter the role for each body.

Examples

^z5750^eFunder
^z1723^eSponsor%^z540^eSponsor
^z711^eDegree granting inst.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the FST for the inverted file, **fields 111, 112, and 113** have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.

Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor or funder, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)

Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

Note It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to **Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion**).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in **fields 111, 112, 113, or 211**. Refer to **Annex 19, Section V — Display formats** for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory (except for **subfield e** which is Optional)

Repeatable

Subfielded ^a Meeting name and number

^b Place

^c Country code

^d Dates

^e Date — ISO form

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is associated with a meeting, conference, seminar, workshop, etc., such as a paper presented at a conference, or the proceedings of a meeting, **field 114** is used to enter the information about the meeting.

SELECTION

1. Enter one meeting statement for each meeting associated with the item. (For an example of a joint report of two meetings, see example 3 under “Examples of complete field”.)
2. If the item is associated with a meeting that takes place consecutively in more than one location, enter a complete meeting statement for each location. (See example 4 under “Examples of complete field”.)
3. When the meeting name appears in several forms, select the form that is most complete, and that appears to be the official name of the meeting.
4. When the name of the meeting appears in several language versions, select, in order of preference, the language version corresponding to:
 - the language of analysis, then
 - the language best understood by the users.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the meeting statement in the form:
^aMeeting name, Number^bPlace^cCountry code^dDates^eDate — ISO form
2. When more than one meeting is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: meeting name and number

1. Capitalize the first letter of each significant word.

2. Omit words at the beginning of the name that indicate frequency, such as “Annual” or “Biennial”.
3. Do not begin the name with the meeting number. If the meeting statement includes a number, enter it after the name. Precede the number with a comma and a space.
4. Use the following abbreviations for numbers:

English:	1st	2d	3d	4th	etc.
French:	1er 1ère	2e	3e		etc.
Spanish:	1o 1a	2o 2a	3o 3a		etc.

Subfield b: place

1. Enter the place in which the meeting was held following the guidelines for entering place names in **Annex 5**.

Subfield c: country code

1. Enter the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**) for the country in which the meeting was held.

Subfield d: dates

1. Enter the date or the inclusive dates on which the meeting was held in the form:

Day Month Year

Day–Day Month Year

Day Month–Day Month Year

Day Month Year–Day Month Year
2. Enter the names of the months in order of preference in:
 - the language of the meeting name, then
 - the language of analysis.
3. Abbreviate the names of the months using the abbreviations in **Annex 7**.

Examples

^d6-11 jun 1988

^d9 ago 1986

^d30 May-4 Jun 1988

^d29 déc 1983-5 jan 1984

Option: subfield e: Date — ISO form

Documentation centres that wish to sort meeting papers by the date of the meeting should adopt **subfield e**. Enter only the opening date of the meeting in ISO²⁰ form.

Enter the opening date in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY is the year, MM is the month and DD is the day.

Example

The dates of the meeting are 30 May–4 Jun 1988.

Enter: ^e1988-05-30

Examples of complete field**Example 1**

^aWorkshop on Pasture Improvement Research in Eastern and Southern Africa^bHarare^cZW^d17-21 Sep 1984

Example 2

^aConférence pour la Protection de la Faune, 1ère^bBangui^cCF^d29 oct-9 nov 1986^e1986-10-29

Example 3

^aIndian Ocean Fishery Commission, 7th Session^bBali^cID^d11-18 Nov 1982%^aIndo-Pacific Fishery Commission, 20th Session^bBali^cID^d11-18 Nov 1982

Example 4

^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bOttawa, ON^cCA^d3-7 Nov 1981%^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bMont Ste Marie, PQ^cCA^d9-13 Nov 1981

²⁰ International Organization for Standardization. *Writing of Calendar Dates in All-Numeric Form*. Geneva, ISO, 1976. (ISO 2014-1976)

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 25

PURPOSE

Field 120 is used to enter the edition statement found on the item when the item is:

- a second or subsequent edition of a work,
- a draft or preliminary version of the work, or
- an abridged edition.

Note This field is also entered when the item is a chapter from a monograph or from a collection (bibliographic level AM and AC).

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the edition statement in the language of analysis.
2. Use the following abbreviations:

a)	English:	1st		2d		3d		4th	etc.
Numbers:	French:	1er	1ère	2e		3e			etc.
	Spanish:	1o	1a	2o	2a	3o	3a		etc.
b) Words:	abbreviated							abbr.	
	abrégée, abreviada							abr.	
	aumentada							aum.	
	borrador							borr.	
	corrected, corrigée, corregida							corr.	
	edition, edición							ed.	
	édition							éd.	
	enlarged							enl.	
	revised, revue, revisada							rev.	
	révisée							rév.	
	preliminary version							prelim. version	
	version préliminaire							v. pré.	
	versión preliminar							v. prel.	

Examples

English:	2d ed.	Draft	4th ed. rev. and enl.
	3d rev. ed.		Prelim. version
French:	2e éd.	V. pré.	3e éd. rév. et corr.
Spanish:	2a ed.	V. prel.	3a ed. aum. y corr.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded ^a Publication place
 ^b Publisher
 ^c Country code

Maximum length 250

PURPOSE

Field 121 is used to enter the name and location of the body responsible for publishing or issuing the item.

Exception This field is left empty if the item is an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AS).

SELECTION

1. When the item is an article from a periodical (i.e., with bibliographic level AS) leave **field 121** empty.
2. When the item is a monograph or a collection, or part of a monograph or collection (i.e., with bibliographic level AM, AC, M, C, MC, or MS) enter the body cited on the item as being the publisher.
3. If more than one publisher is mentioned on the item, enter the one that appears most prominently, or the one that appears first. Mention of the other publisher may be made in a note (**field 150**).
4. When no publisher is mentioned on the item, enter the name of the issuing body, i.e., the institution at which the item was produced.
5. When the name of the issuing body can not be determined, enter s.n. (which is an abbreviation for the Latin phrase sine nomine, meaning without name).

DATA ENTRY

Enter the field in the form:

^aPlace^bPublisher^cCountry code

Subfield a: publication place

1. Enter the place where the item was published or issued, i.e., the location of the publisher or issuing body selected for this field.

2. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in **Annex 5**.
3. If the publisher has more than one location, select the place mentioned most prominently, or the one mentioned first.
4. If no place is mentioned, enter the probable place, enclosed in parentheses.
5. If a probable place of publication or issue can not be determined, enter s.l. (abbreviation of the Latin phrase sine loco, meaning no place).

Subfield b: publisher

1. Enter the name of the publisher in the shortest form in which it can be understood and identified internationally.
2. If the publisher is a body already entered in another field, such as the corporate author field, or the monographic series statement, enter an abbreviated form of the name of the body in the publisher field.
3. Omit words such as Company, Limited, Incorporated, or Publisher, and their equivalents in other languages.
4. When the publisher name contains several hierarchical levels, enter the levels in the order shown on the item. Omit levels that are not necessary to identify the body (example 5).

Example 1

The publisher is the American Library Association. The body has already been entered in full in the corporate author field.

Enter: ^bALA

Example 2

The publisher's name appears as Faber and Faber.

Enter: ^bFaber

Example 3

The publisher's name appears as Sansoni Editore.

Enter: ^bSansoni

Example 4

The publisher's name appears as Institute for Small-Scale Industries, University of the Philippines

Enter: ^bInstitute for Small-Scale Industries, University of the Philippines.

Example 5

The name of the issuing body appears as Direction Nationale de la Statistique et de l'Informatique, Ministère du Plan.

Enter: ^bDirection Nationale de la Statistique et de
l'Informatique

Subfield c: country code

Enter the ISO two-letter country code (**Annex 10**) corresponding to the country of publication.

Examples of complete field

^aChicago, IL^bALA^cUS

^aGenève^bBIT^cCH

^aAnn Arbor, MI^bUniversity Microfilms^cUS

^aKuala Lumpur^bAsian and Pacific Development Centre^cMY

^a(Addis Ababa)^bPopulation Division, ECA^cET

^as.l.^bs.n.^cIN

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, a space, a colon, and a space (:) are supplied in front of **subfield b** (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

Example

London : Butterworths

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 30

PURPOSE

Field 122 is used to enter the date of publication or issue of the item. In addition, this date is entered in standardized form in **field 123**.

SELECTION

1. When the item is:
 - a **monograph or collection**, enter the date of the edition in hand;
 - a **collection**, of which the various volumes bear different dates, enter the first and last years, separated by a hyphen;
 - **part of a monograph**, enter the date of publication of the monograph;
 - an **unpublished item**, enter the date as found on the item;
 - a **thesis**, enter the date of submission; or
 - a **periodical article**, enter the date of the periodical issue.
2. The date of publication or issue is usually found on the back of the title page. However, it may also be found on the cover, on the title page, in the preface, at the end of the text, on the back cover, or elsewhere on the item.
3. When a full date is provided on the item (i.e., day/month/year, or month/year, or season/year) enter the full date.
4. When both an edition date and the date of printing are mentioned, select the date of the edition in hand (example 1).
5. When no date of publication or issue appears on the item, select a probable date, which will be the most recent date cited in the tables, the bibliography, etc. plus 1 year. Enter the probable date in parentheses (example 6).

Example 1

On the back of the title page is the statement: "First published 1974. Second edition 1980. Reprinted 1984."

Enter the date of the most recent edition: 1980

Example 2

The item is a three-volume work of which the first volume was published in 1984, the second in 1985, and the third in 1986.

Enter: 1984-1986

Example 3

The item is a typewritten report. The date 2nd October 1985 appears on the cover page.

Enter: 2 Oct 1985

Example 4

The item is a periodical article appearing in the January 1987 issue of *Tropical doctor*.

Enter: Jan 1987

Example 5

The item is a periodical article. The date of the periodical issue is "Spring 1988".

Enter: Spring 1988

Example 6

The item is undated. The most recent entry in the bibliography appended to the item is dated 1985. You judge that the probable date of issue is 1986.

Enter: (1986)

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the names of months in the language of analysis. Use the abbreviations of names of months in **Annex 7**.
2. Enter the names of seasons in full in the language of analysis.
3. When a probable date has been supplied by the documentalist, enter it in parentheses.

Examples

1980

1984-1986

Jan 1987

Hiver 1988

6 jun 1988

(1985)

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 123 is used to enter the date of publication or issue of the item in a form that will facilitate on-line retrieval, i.e., following the international standard for writing dates in all-numeric form.²¹

It is entered in addition to **field 122** — Date of publication/issue — Free form.

SELECTION

1. Select the date that was selected for entry in **field 122**.
2. When the entry in **field 122** includes a first and last date, enter only the last date in **field 123**.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the date in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY is the year, MM is the month, and DD the day.

Examples

Date in free form	Date in ISO form
1980	1980-00-00
1984-1986	1986-00-00
2 Oct 1985	1985-10-02
Jan 1987	1987-01-00
Spring 1988 (published in the Northern Hemisphere)	1988-04-00
(1986)	1986-00-00
1-7 Apr 1976	1976-04-07

²¹ International Organization for Standardization. *Writing of Calendar Dates in All-Numeric Form*. Geneva, ISO, 1976. (ISO 2014-1976)

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

Field 123 is used for retrieval on date. It is not included in the display format for the user. Retrieval on this field should normally be done using the right-truncation feature in MICRO-ISIS.

Examples

1986\$	to retrieve items published in 1986.
198\$	to retrieve items published between 1980 and 1989.
1986\$ + 1987\$ + 1988\$	to retrieve all items published between 1986 and 1988.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded ^a Number of pages/pieces
 ^b Description
 ^c Dimensions

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a monograph or a collection, **field 130** is used to enter the physical description of the item.

Note 1 Do not use **field 130** for a chapter from a book or a collection, or for an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AM, AC, or AS). Instead, use **field 131** — Part statement.

Note 2 When the item is one volume of a collection (bibliographic level MC), enter the pagination and description of the item in **field 130** and the volume number in **field 131** — Part statement.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the collation in the language of analysis.
2. Enter the field in the form:
^aNumber of pages/pieces^bDescription^cDimensions

Subfield a: number of pages/pieces

1. When the item is:
 - a **monograph**, enter the number of pages in the main sequence of numbered pages;
 - a **monograph with several sequences of numbered pages**, enter the total number of pages, or, if this can not be done readily, enter “1 v. (various pagings)”, or its equivalent in the language of analysis;
 - a **monograph with unnumbered pages**, count the number of pages. If this cannot be done readily, enter an approximate number and precede the number by the abbreviation ca.

Note This rule also applies to a reprint that was originally part of a larger item, and that retains the original pagination. (See **field 140** — Monographic series, selection, paragraph 3.)

- a **loose-leaf publication**, enter the number of volumes, and the designation “(loose-leaf)”, or its equivalent in the language of analysis;
- a **collection**, enter the number of volumes;

- **cartographic material**, enter the number and type of physical pieces; or
- **audiovisual material**, enter the number and type of physical pieces, and, where applicable, the duration.

2. Use the following abbreviations:

pages, paginas	p.
volumes, volumen	v.
minutes	min.

Enter designations such as microfiches, sound cassettes, and film reels, in full in the language of analysis.

3. Leave one space after the number.

Examples

^a194 p.
^aca. 100 p.
^a1 v. (various pagings)
^a1 v. (paginación variada)
^a1 v. (paginations multiples)
^a1 v. (loose-leaf)
^a3 v.
^a15 maps
^a1 sound cassette (60 min.)
^a1 film reel (30 min.)
^a1 videocassette (24 min.)

Subfield b: description

1. Enter in **subfield b** notes concerning the presence of illustrations, maps, tables, bibliographies, etc., and, for audiovisual material, notes concerning colour, sound characteristics, etc.
2. Enter notes concerning accompanying material in **field 150** — Notes.
3. Use appropriate abbreviations in the language of analysis.
4. Separate each element by a comma and a space.

Examples

^bill.
^bill., maps
^bbibliog. p. 170-179
^bgraphs, 55 ref.
^bsd., b&w

Subfield c: dimensions

Subfield c is used to enter the dimensions of audiovisual material. Its use for recording the dimensions of printed material is optional.

Example

^c16 mm.

Examples of complete field

^a163 p.

^a300 p.^b150 ref.

^a2 v.^bmaps, tables

^a1 film reel (12 min.)^bsd., col.^c16 mm.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, **subfield b** is preceded by a space, a colon, and a space; and **subfield c** is preceded by a space, a semicolon, and a space (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

Example

1 film reel (12 min.) : sd., col. ; 16 mm.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded ^a Volume/issue no.
 ^b Pagination of part

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

Field 131 is used to enter:

- the pagination of a chapter within a book (bibliographic level AM) or multivolume work (bibliographic level AC);
- the volume and issue number and pagination of an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AS); or
- the volume number, when the item is one volume of a multivolume work (bibliographic level MC), or a chapter from a multivolume work (bibliographic level AC).

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the field in the form:

^aVolume/issue no.^bPagination

Subfield a: volume/issue no.

1. When the item is an **article from a periodical**, enter the volume and issue number of the periodical in **subfield a**.
2. When the item is a **single volume from a collection**, enter the volume number in **subfield a**.
3. When the item is a **chapter from one volume of a collection**, enter the volume number in **subfield a**.
4. When the item is a **part of a monograph**, leave **subfield a** empty.
5. Use the abbreviations v. for volume and no. for number.
6. Leave one space before the number.

Examples

^av. 17, no. 3

^ano. 52

^av. 2

Subfield b: pagination of part

1. When the item is an article from a periodical or a chapter from a monograph or a collection, enter the first and last pages covered by the item in **subfield b**.
2. If the item covers more than one series of pages, enter the pagination as in the second example in paragraph 4 below.
3. If the item is a volume from a collection, leave **subfield b** empty. Enter its volume number in **subfield a** of **field 131** and the pagination of the volume in **field 130**. (See examples of complete field, no. 4 below.)
4. Leave one space after the abbreviation p. Separate the first and last page number with a hyphen.

Examples

^bp. 125-136

^bp. 17-24, 38, 51-52

Examples of complete field**Example 1**

The item is an article appearing on pages 169 to 180 of *Community development journal*, volume 21, number 3.

Field 131: ^av. 21, no. 3^bp. 169-180

Example 2

The item is a chapter appearing on pages 7 to 22 of a monograph.

Field 131: ^bp. 7-22

Example 3

The item is a chapter covering pages 55-70 of volume 2 of a three-volume work.

Field 131: ^av. 2^bp. 55-70

Example 4

The item is the first volume of a two volume work. It contains 342 pages.

Field 131: ^av. 1

Field 130: ^a342 p.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded	Either	^a Series title	or	^z Authority code
		^b Series part		^b Series part

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 140 is used to enter the series title and part number when the item being catalogued is part of a monographic series.

DEFINITION

A monographic series is a group of monographs issued in succession, intended to be continued indefinitely, and related to one another by the fact that each one bears, in addition to its own title, a common title and, usually, a volume number. The volumes have separate pagination.

Examples

World Bank staff working paper

Industrial development review series

NIEPA occasional paper

Monographs on communication planning

Estudios e informes de la CEPAL

SELECTION

1. Select one monographic series statement for each series of which the item is part.
2. If the monographic series title appears in more than one form on the item, choose the form found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).
3. If the item is a reprint of a periodical article, or of a chapter from a book, and is now issued in a reprint series, enter the series statement in **field 140**, the date of the reprint in **fields 122 and 123**, and the collation in **field 130**. Enter information concerning the item's original source (periodical title or monograph title, part statement and date) as a note in **field 150**. (See example 4 below.)

Note When a reprint that was originally part of a larger item retains the pagination of the original, count the number of pages, and enter the total in **field 130**.

Example 1

The item bears two monographic series statements — *World Employment Programme research working papers* and *Population and employment working paper* no. 10.

Enter both series statements in **field 140**.

Example 2

The title of the monographic series appears in two different forms on the item — *RFFPI family planning evaluation manuals* and *Family planning research and evaluation manual*. The SAF shows that the first-mentioned title is the established form.

Select: RFFPI family planning evaluation manuals

Example 3

The monographic series statement appears on the item in both English and French — *Terminology bulletin* no. 327 and *Bulletin de terminologie* no. 327. The SAF shows that the English version of the title is the established form.

Select: Terminology bulletin

Example 4

The item originally appeared on pages 85–96 of *Population studies*, volume 27, number 1, March 1973. It has now appeared as number 58 in the *Population reprint series* issued by the Department of Population Planning of the University of Michigan.

Field 140: ^aPopulation reprint series - University of Michigan,
Department of Population Planning^bno. 58

Field 130: ^a12 p.

Field 150: Reprinted from: Population studies, v. 27, no. 1, Mar
1973, p. 85-96

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Serials Authority File**

1. Enter the field in the form:
^aSeries title^bSeries part
2. When more than one series statement is being entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: series title

1. In **subfield a**, enter the series title as found in the SAF. If the title is not in the SAF, create an entry following the rules in **Annex 4**.
2. Capitalize the first word of the series title, proper names, and significant words in the names of corporate bodies.

3. When the name of the issuing body is added after the title, precede the name of the issuing body with a space dash space (-).

Subfield b: series part

1. Enter the series part in **subfield b** as it is found on the item, except:
 - for the part designations, use abbreviations such as v. (for volume), no. (for number), and pt. (for part); and
 - convert Roman numerals to Arabic numbers.

Option

Those documentation centres that wish to produce printed monographic series indexes should adopt the following rule:

To ensure that the volume numbers are sorted correctly in a monographic series index, enter the volume number as a three-digit number, e.g., enter 7 as 007.

2. Include such terms as “special issue”, “new series”, etc. (or their equivalents in other languages), when these are part of the numbering.
3. Leave one space between the part designation and the number. Separate volume and part numbers with a comma and a space.
4. If the item spans several numbers within the series, separate the numbers with a hyphen.

Examples

new ser., no. 1
 nouv. sér., no. 10
 v. 4, pt. 2
 Bd. 10, Hf. 3
 no. 25-26
 no. 88-4
 v. 9
 v. 11, special issue

Examples of complete field

^aManagement development series^bno. 24
 ^aWorld Employment Programme research working paper% ^aPopulation and employment working paper^bno. 10
 ^aResearch report - International Food Policy Research Institute^bno. 49

Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

1. In a system where computerized Serials Authority Records have been entered into the bibliographic database, instead of entering the series title in full, enter its authority code (i.e.,

the MFN of the serials authority record) in **subfield z**. In printed output, the code will be replaced by the full title of the series, as explained in Section 8 of the Introduction and in **Annex 4**.

2. Enter the field in the form:
`^zAuthority code^bSeries part`
3. Enter the series part following the rules for **subfield b** under Option 1 above.

Example

The item is number 150 in the *CSC Technical Publication Series*. The authority code for this title is 1850.

Enter: `^z1850^bno. 150`

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, a space, a semicolon, and a space are inserted in front of **subfield b** (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

Example

Management development series ; no. 24

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Subfielded ^a Thesis designation
 ^b Degree
 ^c Course
 ^d Number

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a thesis, **field 141** is used to enter information pertaining to the degree and/or course for which the thesis was presented. The field has been structured in such a way as to allow for variations in the way theses are described in different educational systems.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the thesis statement as it is found on the item, in the form:
 ^aThesis designation^bDegree^cCourse^dNumber
2. Enter the name of the university granting the degree in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).
3. Enter the year of presentation in **field 122** — Date of publication/issue — Free form and **field 123** — Date of publication/issue — ISO form.
4. In **subfield a**, enter the term used on the item itself to describe the thesis.

Examples

^aThesis
^aThèse
^aDissertation
^aMémoire de Diplôme

5. In **subfield b**, enter the degree for which the thesis was presented in the form found on the item. If no degree is mentioned, leave **subfield b** empty.

Examples

^bPh.D.
^bDoctorat d'Etat
^bDoctorat 3e cycle
^bM.Sc.

6. In **subfield c**, enter the course for which the thesis was prepared, if it is part of the thesis statement. If no course is mentioned, leave **subfield c** empty.

Examples

^cDroit économique

^cSciences naturelles

7. In **subfield d**, enter the thesis number if it is included in the thesis statement. If no number is mentioned, leave **subfield d** empty.

Example

^d421

Examples of complete field

^aThesis^bPh.D.

^aThesis^bM.Sc.^cAdministration

^aThèse^cSciences naturelles^d421

^aMémoire de fin d'études de cycle de spécialisation^cPhytotechnie
- amélioration des plantes

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, a comma and a space are inserted in front of **subfields b, c, and d**.

Examples

Thesis, M.Sc., Administration

Thèse, Sciences naturelles, 421

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Subfielded ^a Project name
 ^b Project number

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

When the item is an official project document, or a report describing work carried out under a project, **field 142** is used to identify the project.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the field in the form:
 ^aProject name^bProject number
2. Enter the official form of the project name in **subfield a**.
3. Capitalize each main word in the name of the project.
4. Enter the official project number in **subfield b** exactly as it is found on the item.

Option

If the project number is used as a retrieval element, punctuation within the project number should be consistent. For example, if the elements of the numbers are sometimes separated with slashes and sometimes with hyphens, a decision should be made to adopt either slashes or hyphens.

5. When the item pertains to more than one project, enter the name and number of each of the projects. Separate multiple occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

^aOperational Support to Transmigration Schemes

^aLake Basin River Catchment Development^bKEN-82-001

^bRLA674/024

^bIND-82-026%^bIND-82-015

^aAssistance à la Planification^bZAI-79-002%^aAppui à la Cellule
de Coopération et des Ressources Extérieures^bZAI-84-011

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 700

PURPOSE

Field 150 is used to enter descriptive information that does not come into the scope of the other fields.

SELECTION

Enter the following kinds of information in **field 150**:

- Notes concerning translations: Enter the original title or enter the language of the original and, if available, the name of the translator;
- Notes relating to the original version when the item is a reprint;
- Notes regarding the form of the item;
- Notes describing accompanying material;
- Notes regarding the library's copy of the item; and
- Any other information that the documentalist judges important enough to be included in the record.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the notes in the language of analysis.
2. Enter a period and a space after each note except the last.

Examples

Translation of *Donde no hay doctor*

Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud

5 1/4" diskette in back pocket

Originally published in *Contemporary Southeast Asia*, v. 8, no. 2, Sep 1986, p. 131-150

Unpublished typescript

Also available on microfiche

Photocopy. Library has v. 1 only

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 13

PURPOSE

Field 160 is used to enter the International Standard Book Number (ISBN) of the item.

Note The ISBN is also entered when the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection (bibliographic level AM or AC).

DEFINITION

The ISBN is a code that uniquely identifies the title, or edition of the title, to which it is assigned. The code is a 10-digit number divided into four parts of various lengths separated by hyphens. It is usually found with the publisher information on the back of the title page, but may be found on the back cover, or on any other part of the item.

Example

ISBN 0-8389-3210-X

SELECTION

1. If more than one ISBN appears on the item, enter the one relating to the item in hand.

Example

The item in hand is the paperback edition with the ISBN statement on it:

ISBN 0-8389-3210-X

ISBN 0-8389-3211-8 pbk

Enter: 0-8389-3211-8

2. When a single record has been created for a collection, each volume of which has a separate ISBN, enter each ISBN.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the ISBN as it is found on the item. Replace any spaces or other punctuation within the number with hyphens.

Example

ISBN on the item: 0 907853 10 2

Enter: 0-907853-10-2

2. Do not enter the prefix "ISBN". (This is supplied in the display format.)
3. If more than one ISBN is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

0-19-529710-5

0-553-23249-5%0-553-24496-5

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 50

PURPOSE

Field 161 is used to enter the document or report number(s) assigned to the item by the issuing organization. It is also used to enter the number known as a symbol on official United Nations documents.

Note The document number is also entered when the item is a chapter of a monograph or collection that has a document number (bibliographic level AM or AC).

DEFINITION

A document number, report number, or document symbol is a combination of letters and numbers that provides a unique identification to items issued by an organization. It usually includes the acronym of the organization, or of the department within the organization, that issued the item; and it is generally located prominently on the title page or cover of the item.

Example

ST/ESA/SER.R/102

SELECTION

1. If the item bears more than one document number, enter each number.
2. Do not treat a string of initials or acronyms that does not contain a number as a document number.

Example

NRD/WR/Unesco/WHO/ECA is not a document number.

3. Do not confuse document numbers with:
 - monographic series statements;
 - contract or grant numbers, which are usually identified as such;
 - sales numbers; or
 - job numbers, which are often found on United Nations material, usually on the back cover.

Example 1

The document symbol ST/ESA/SER.R/79 appears in the top right-hand corner of the title page of a report by the United Nations Department of International Economic and Social Affairs.

Field 161: ST/ESA/SER.R/79

Example 2

On the back of the title page of a document from the United Nations Economic Commission for Latin America, there appears the symbol E/CEPAL/G.1224. On the back cover, the number 82-10-2189 appears. The latter is the job number. Do not enter it in the record.

Field 161: E/CEPAL/G.1224

Example 3

The item is a United Nations publication. On the back of the title page the following numbers appear:

Sales No. E.85.I.15
03500C
02500P

Do not select these numbers for entry in **field 161**.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the document number exactly as it is found on the item, including spaces and punctuation.
2. If more than one document number is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

PGI-84/WS/4
IDRC-TS40e
IESA/P/POPIN/G/4
E/CN.3/AC.1/1983/R.5
DP/UN/LES-71-503/8%DP/UN/LES-73-029/9

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

Field 162 is used in the following circumstances:

1. In information systems that do not provide a document-delivery service, **field 162** is used to enter information on where the item can be obtained if it is not available from the issuing body or through normal commercial channels.
2. In information systems that include restricted material, **field 162** is used to indicate that access to the item is restricted, and the name of the agency from whom permission to use the item can be requested.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. When the item is not available from the issuing body or through normal commercial channels, enter the name or acronym of the organization from which the item can be obtained, its address, the form in which it can be obtained, and the price. When mentioning the price, indicate the currency either by entering it in full or by using the ISO currency codes.²²

Enter the field in the form:

Organization name, address; form; price

Example

Institut d'Economie Quantitative, 27 rue de Liban, 1002 Tunis
Belvédère, Tunisia; microfiche; 15 TND

2. When access to the item is restricted (i.e., when such terms as "Limited distribution", "For internal use", "Classified", "Confidential", or "Restricted" appear on the item), enter the designation Restr. Add the name and address of the organization responsible for granting or obtaining permission to use the item if this organization is not the issuing body.

²² International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Currencies and Funds*. 2nd ed. Geneva, ISO, 1981. (ISO 4217)

Enter the field in the form:

Restr. Organization name, address.

Examples

Restr.

Restr. UN Dept. of Technical Co-operation for Development, 1 UN
Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA

3. When the item is restricted, also enter the appropriate descriptor, e.g., <RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS>, in **field 301** — Secondary descriptors. This allows restricted items to be excluded in an on-line search or in printed outputs if so desired.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Either Not subfielded **or** Subfielded ^z Authority code

Maximum length 400

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is an article from a serial (bibliographic level AS), **field 200** is used to enter the title of the serial.

Note The title of a monographic series is not entered here, but in **field 140**.

SELECTION

1. Select one serial title for entry in **field 200**.
2. When the serial has more than one title, choose the title found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).
3. If the serial has changed title, enter the title of the serial at the time the article appeared in it.
4. Enter the volume and issue number in which the article appears, and its pagination, in **field 131** — Part statement. Enter the date of the serial issue in **field 122** — Date of publication/issue — Free form and **field 123** — Date of publication/issue — ISO form.

DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Serials Authority File**

1. Enter the title of the serial as found in the Serials Authority File (SAF). If the title does not appear in the SAF, create an entry for it following the rules in **Annex 4**.
2. Capitalize the first word of the serial title, proper nouns, and each significant word in the names of corporate bodies.
3. If the first word in the title is an article (“a”, “an”, “the”, or their equivalents in other languages), drop the initial article, unless this would change the sense of the title. If the article is retained, enclose it in triangular brackets so that it will be ignored for filing purposes. (The triangular brackets will not appear in printed output destined for the user.)
4. When the serial title consists of a generic term followed by the name of the issuing body, separate the two elements with a space, a dash, and a space.

5. When the serial is a supplement to, or a series within, a serial, separate the main title from the supplement or series title with a period and a space.
6. Do not enter a period at the end of the field.

Examples

Library Association record
 Bulletin de liaison du Comité Interafricain d'Etudes
 Hydrauliques
 IDRC reports
 Library quarterly
 <Der> deutsche Apotheker
 Journal of polymer science. Part A, General papers
 Economic report - Somali National Bank

Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

In a system where computerized Serials Authority Records have been entered into the bibliographic database, enter only the authority code (i.e., the MFN of the serial authority record) in **subfield z**. In printed output, the code will be replaced by the full title of the serial, as explained in Section 8 of the Introduction and in **Annex 4**.

Example

The item is an article from the periodical *Jeune Afrique*. The authority code for this serial is 4007.

Field 200: ^z4007

Example of a set of fields used to describe part of a serial

The item is a periodical article entitled "Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India". It appeared in volume 13, number 4, of *Journal of peasant studies*, in July 1986. The article covered pages 165 to 220.

Option 1: manual Serials Authority File

Title (100):	Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India
Title of serial (200):	Journal of peasant studies
ISSN (201):	0306-6150
Part statement (131):	^av. 13, no. 4^bp. 165-220
Date of publication/issue	
— free form (122):	Jul 1986
Date of publication/issue	
— ISO form (123):	1986-07-00

Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

Title (100):	Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India
Title of serial (200):	^z4008
Part statement (131):	^av. 13, no. 4^bp. 165-220
Date of publication/issue — free form (122):	Jul 1986
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (123):	1986-07-00

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In printed output, using option 2, **fields 911** and **912** of the serials authority record will be printed instead of **fields 200** and **201**.
2. If option 2 has been used, retrieval may be carried out on this field using either title words or the authority code for the serial title.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 9

PURPOSE

When a serial title has been entered in **field 200**, **field 201** is used to enter its International Standard Serial Number (ISSN).

DEFINITION

The ISSN is an eight-character code divided into two groups of four characters separated by a hyphen. It is assigned by the national or regional centres of the International Serials Data System (ISDS) to provide a unique identification to a serial.

Examples

0024-2519

0072-193X

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual Serials Authority File**

1. Enter the ISSN as it is found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).
2. Do not enter the letters ISSN in front of the number. (These can be supplied in the display format.)
3. If an ISSN can not be found either in the SAF, on the item, or in a serials directory, leave the field empty.

Example

The item is an article from an issue of *Journal of peasant studies*, the ISSN of which is 0306-6150.

Field 200: Journal of peasant studies

Field 201: 0306-6150

Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

If an authority code has been entered in **field 200** instead of the serial title (see **field 200** — Data entry, option 2) do not enter anything in **field 201**. In printed output, the field in the authority record containing the ISSN will be printed instead of **field 201**.

Example

The item is an article from the periodical *Food and nutrition bulletin*. The authority code for the periodical has been entered in **field 200**. The authority record also contains the ISSN of the periodical. Do not enter anything in **field 201**.

When the bibliographic record for the item is printed, the serial title and ISSN will appear as:

Food and nutrition bulletin (ISSN 0379-5721)

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection, or a volume from a collection (with bibliographic level AM, AC, or MC), **field 202** is used to enter the title of the parent item.

SELECTION

1. Enter the title that is found on the title page of the parent item.
2. If there is no title page, select the title from the cover, half title page, spine, or other part of the parent. If the title is cited in different ways on these parts of the parent, choose the title by which it is most likely to be known.
3. If there are several language versions of the title, choose, in order of preference:
 - the language of analysis,
 - the language best understood by the users, then
 - the title cited first on the title page.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under **field 100** — Title.

Example of a set of fields used to describe a chapter from a monograph

The item is a chapter, entitled "Rural energy systems in Indonesia", extracted from a monograph entitled *Integrated rural energy planning*.

Title (100):	Rural energy systems in Indonesia
Title of parent (M/C) (202):	Integrated rural energy planning
Publisher (121):	^aGuildford^bButterworths^cGB
Date of publication/issue — free form (122):	1985
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (123):	1985-00-00
Part statement (131):	^bp. 39-68

Example of a set of fields used to describe a chapter from a collection

The item is a contribution, entitled "Automatic data processing, library and information center applications", taken from volume 2 of a collection entitled *Encyclopedia of library and information science*.

Title (100): Automatic data processing, library and information center applications

Title of parent (M/C) (202): Encyclopedia of library and information science

Publisher (121): ^aNew York, NY^bDekker^cUS

Date of publication/issue
— free form (122): 1969

Date of publication/issue
— ISO form (123): 1969-00-00

Part statement (131): ^av. 2^bp. 184-230

Example of a set of fields used to describe a monograph from a collection

The item, entitled *Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems*, is the first volume of a two-volume collection entitled *Recommended methods for development-information systems*.

Title (100): Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems

Title of parent (M/C) (202): Recommended methods for development-information systems

Publisher (121): ^aOttawa, ON^bIDRC^cCA

Date of publication/issue
— free form (122): 1982

Date of publication/issue
— ISO form (123): 1982-00-00

Part statement (131): ^av. 1

Collation (M/C) (130): ^a272 p.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded ^a Personal author
 ^b Role

Maximum length 80

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a chapter or contribution from a monograph, **field 210** is used to enter the name of the person or persons responsible for the intellectual content of the parent item — usually the editor or the compiler of the work.

SELECTION

1. Enter the name of each author, editor, or compiler of the parent item.
2. Do not select the names of translators or illustrators, unless the item is likely to be looked for under these names.
3. Do not select the names of persons responsible only for the foreword or the preface.

Example

The item is a study by J. Lundqvist that is part of a monograph entitled *Rice societies: Asian problems and prospects*, edited by I. Norlund, S. Cederroth, and I. Gerdin.

Enter the names of the three editors in **field 210**.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the names in the order in which they appear on the parent item.
2. Enter the field in the form:
 ^aPersonal author^bRole
3. When there is more than one author, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: personal author

1. If you are using a personal name authority file, enter the name as it is found in the authority file.
2. If the name is not in the authority file, or if you are not using an authority file, follow the rules in **Annex 1: Guidelines for personal author names**.

3. Precede each personal author name with the subfield delimiter ^a.

Examples

^aWeekes Vagliani, Winifred

^aSeung, Han Lee

^aEl-Sawy, M.F.

Subfield b: role

1. Enter the role only if the person is an editor or a compiler.
2. Enter the abbreviations ed. or comp.
3. Precede the role with the subfield delimiter ^b.

Examples of complete field

^aFarmer, George^bcomp.

^aEl Mahgary, Y.^bed.%^aBiswan, A.K.^bed.

^aNorlund, I.^bed.%^aCederroth, S.^bed.%^aGerdin, I.^bed.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded **Either** ^a Main body or ^z Authority code
 ^b Sub-body
 ^c Place
 ^d Country code

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is a chapter or contribution from a monograph or a collection, **field 211** is used to enter the name of each corporate body that has intellectual responsibility for the parent item.

Note 1 Names of meetings, conferences, workshops, etc. are not entered here, but in **field 114** — Meeting(s).

Note 2 Names of projects are not entered here, but in **field 142** — Project(s).

SELECTION

1. Enter each body that is cited on the parent as having intellectual responsibility for the parent item.
2. Do not enter the names of bodies that only published, sponsored, or funded the parent item.
3. If the name of the body is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
 - the language of analysis, then
 - the language of the item.
4. Do not enter the corporate author of the parent item if it has already been entered in **field 111** as corporate author of the part that is being described.

Example 1

The item is a chapter, by M. Lukumbuzya, in a monograph entitled *Africa: priorities, problems and prospects*, by the University of Ottawa.

Enter University of Ottawa in **field 211**

Example 2

The item is one of a set of conference papers published as a monograph under the title *Crisis and recovery in sub-Saharan Africa*, edited by Tore Rose and published by the OECD. The conference was sponsored by three organizations.

Enter the name of the editor in **field 210**,
Enter the name, place and date of the conference in **field 114**, and
Do not enter any corporate body in **field 211**.

However, in the record for the whole monograph, enter the names of the three sponsoring organizations in **field 113** — Other associated institution(s).

Example 3

The item is a conference paper prepared by the International Labour Office (ILO) extracted from a set of conference papers edited and issued by the ILO.

Enter the ILO as the corporate author of the part being described in **field 111**, and
Do not enter anything in **field 211**.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under **field 111**.

Examples**Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File**

^aILO^bWorld Employment Programme^cGeneva^dCH

^aUniversity of Ottawa^cOttawa, ON^dCA

^aInternational Institute of Tropical
Agriculture^cIbadan^dNG%^aUniversity of Ife^bInstitute of
Agricultural Research and Training^cIbadan^dNG

Option 2: computerized corporate name authority records

^z1039

^z223%^z2606

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in **fields 111, 112, 113, or 211**. Refer to **Annex 19, Section V — Display formats** for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 300 is used to enter the descriptors that describe the main subject of the item, and that are suitable as headings in a subject index.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see **System manager note 2** below, and **Annex 3**.

SELECTION

1. Select the descriptors from the thesaurus used by the information system.
2. Follow the guidelines for selecting descriptors in **Annex 3**.
3. Select up to six primary descriptors.
4. Select only those descriptors that would be meaningful as headings in a subject index.
5. Do not select the following types of descriptors:
 - those that are useful only when combined with other descriptors during on-line retrieval, e.g., CASE STUDIES, ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS, STATISTICAL TABLES; and
 - those that indicate the form of the document, e.g., PROJECT REPORTS, CONFERENCE PAPERS.

These types of descriptors are entered in **field 301** — Secondary descriptors.

6. Do not enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, regions, and continents) in **field 300**. These are entered in **field 302** — Geographic descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter each descriptor exactly as it appears in the thesaurus. Do not abbreviate it or alter the spelling and punctuation in any way.

Examples

NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORDER
ARAB ORGANIZATIONS
LABOUR FORCE

MIDDLE-SIZED TOWNS
BREAST FEEDING
ENCYCLOPAEDIAS

2. Enter the descriptors in upper case,²³ enclosed in triangular brackets. Do not leave any spaces between the descriptors.

Examples

<TELECOMMUNICATIONS><TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER>
<POPULATION AGRICOLE><CONSCIENCE DE CLASSE><IDEOLOGIES>

3. When writing the descriptors on the input sheet, do not divide a word across two lines.

Example

enter<POPULATION
FORECASTS>
not<POPULATION FORE-
CASTS>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the display format, **fields 300 to 304** are printed following each other, so that they appear to be a single field. A space, a dash, and a space are inserted before **field 301** to indicate that the descriptors appearing before the dash are the primary descriptors. In MICRO-ISIS, the use of either header mode or data mode automatically replaces the triangular brackets with a semicolon and a space.

Example (Descriptors in fields 300, 301, and 302)

POPULATION AGRICOLE; CONSCIENCE DE CLASSE; IDEOLOGIES - MILIEU
SOCIAL; PARENTE; ASPECTS ECONOMIQUES; MEXIQUE

2. In the FST for the inverted file, all of the descriptor fields — **300, 301, 302, 303, and 304** — have been assigned the field identifier 301. In addition, **field 300** has been entered a second time in the FST with the field identifier 300.

To search on a descriptor regardless of which descriptor field it is in, use field identifier 301.

To search on a descriptor only if it is the main subject of the item, use field identifier 300.

²³ Experience has shown that the use of upper case for entering descriptors is more efficient because 1) descriptors usually appear in the thesaurus in upper case, without accents, and 2) when changes are made to the descriptors in the thesaurus database, it is easier to update the descriptors in the bibliographic record if they have been entered in upper case and without accents.

Example

To retrieve all items indexed with the descriptor “remote sensing”, use the search expression: REMOTE SENSING/(301)

To retrieve only items whose main subject is “remote sensing”, use the search expression: REMOTE SENSING/(300)

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 400

PURPOSE

Field 301 is used to enter the subject descriptors selected from the thesaurus that were not entered in **field 300**.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see **System manager note** under **field 300**, and **Annex 3**.

SELECTION

1. Select the descriptors from the thesaurus according to the guidelines in **Annex 3**.
2. Do not repeat descriptors that have been entered as primary descriptors in **field 300**.
3. Do not enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, regions, and continents) in **field 301**. These are entered in **field 302** — Geographic descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under **field 300**.

Examples

<BROADCASTING><RADIO><TELEVISION><CASE STUDIES>
<MILIEU SOCIAL><PARENTE><ASPECTS ECONOMIQUES>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See **System manager note** under **field 300**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 302 is used to enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, continents, and regions) selected from the thesaurus.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see **System manager note** under **field 300**, and **Annex 3**.

SELECTION

1. Select the geographic descriptors from the thesaurus according to the guidelines in **Annex 3**.
2. If geographic descriptors that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus (e.g., names of geographic areas at the subnational level) have been adopted as local descriptors, do not enter these here, but in **field 303** — Local descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under **field 300**.

Examples

<LATIN AMERICA><UNITED KINGDOM><THAILAND><INDIA>
<MEXIQUE>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See **System manager note** under **field 300**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 303 is used to enter descriptors that the system requires and that do not fall within the scope of the thesaurus.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see **System manager note** under **field 300**, and **Annex 3**.

SELECTION

1. Enter the following types of descriptors in **field 303**:
 - geographic descriptors that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of cities, states, subnational regions, rivers, and mountains;
 - names of institutions that are the subject of the item and that are not in the thesaurus;
 - names of persons that are the subject of the item; and
 - subject descriptors not accepted for inclusion in the thesaurus.
2. To ensure that descriptors in this field are entered consistently, keep a list of those that have been used. This will serve as an authority list.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the descriptor as found in the authority list of local descriptors. If the descriptor is not in the authority list, make an entry following guidelines established by the documentation centre.
2. Enter the descriptors in upper case between triangular brackets. Do not leave a space between the descriptors.

Examples

<CALCUTTA><BOMBAY>

<NILE>

<NYERERE, J. K. >

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See **System manager note** under **field 300**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

Field 304 is used to enter descriptors that are not in the thesaurus but that the documentation centre has proposed or wishes to propose for inclusion, such as names of new concepts or technologies.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see **System manager note** under **field 300**, and **Annex 3**.

SELECTION

This field should be used only rarely and only after carefully considering whether a new descriptor is needed and the form it should take. Research should be carried out to determine, for example, whether the term really describes a new concept or whether it is only a new synonym; and whether the proposed descriptor is the most appropriate term to describe the new concept.

Do not use this field if a way can be found to express the concept using descriptors from the thesaurus.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the descriptors in upper case and between triangular brackets. Do not leave a space between descriptors.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See **System manager note** under **field 300**.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1000

PURPOSE

Field 310 is used to enter a summary of the subject of the item that supplements the information entered in the descriptor fields — **300** to **304**.

DEFINITION

An abstract is a concise and accurate representation of the contents of a document, without interpretation or criticism.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Prepare an abstract under the following circumstances:
 - When the item is to be included in a published bibliography and/or an internationally available database. (Because the item is not likely to be immediately available to the user, the abstract will help the user judge whether the item is relevant to his or her needs.)
 - When it is judged that the descriptors alone do not give sufficient indication of the subject of the item.
2. Enter the abstract in the language of analysis.
3. Do not use a percent sign (%) in the abstract, but write the word in full.

Example²⁴

Descriptors:

Field 300: <WATER SUPPLY><DESALINATION><WATER REUSE>

Field 301: <APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY><WATER RESOURCES>
<RENEWABLE RESOURCES><RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT>
<CONFERENCE PAPERS>

²⁴ Adapted from *Development Information Abstracts*, produced by the United Nations Information Systems Unit.

Field 302: <CHINA>

Abstract:

Field 310: Seminar paper forecasts that China's water consumption will greatly increase and therefore nonconventional water resources will need to be developed. Discusses work done on desalination using such technologies as electrodialysis, reverse osmosis, distillation, and solar process. Also describes reuse of municipal waste water, and rainwater harvesting in rural areas. Concludes that further study and careful planning are needed.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

When an information system produces current awareness bulletins arranged by broad subject area, **field 320** is used to enter the broad subject heading.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Each information system will draw up its own list of broad subject headings representing the broad subject areas covered by the database. About 10 headings should be sufficient.
2. Enter only one heading for each item.

Examples

Rural development

Migration

Transport

Tourism

Health

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 4

PURPOSE

Field 400 is used to enter a code indicating the stage that the item has reached in the processing cycle.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Select **one** of the following codes indicating the stage that the item has reached in the processing cycle:
 - ORD The item is on order.
 - RECD The item has been received but has not yet been catalogued.
 - LIST The item has been catalogued and will appear in the next list of new additions to the collection.
 - CAT The item is catalogued and has appeared in the list of new additions (or it was not chosen to appear in the list).
 - DEL The record is no longer active but the documentation centre wishes to retain it for statistical or other purposes. It is excluded from the set of records describing the collection. This may happen under the following circumstances:
 - another copy of the record has been created because additional copies of the item have been ordered. Once the additional copies are received, they are added to the original record. The second record is retained for statistical purposes; or
 - the item has been withdrawn from the collection or is lost.
2. Change the code as the item progresses through the processing cycle.

Examples

The item has been received but not catalogued.

Enter: RECD

The item has been catalogued and will appear in the next list of new additions.

Change the previous code to: LIST

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

To carry out global changes on this field, program **CHANGE**, included on the diskette, may be used to change automatically the status code in all records containing a common code (see **Annex 19**).

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 410 is used to indicate in which of the library collections the item is kept. It is normally used in conjunction with the call number in **field 411** to indicate the exact location of the item in the library.

It is also used to indicate the exact location of nonbook material filed by running number, such as microfiches.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter a code indicating the location of the item in the library.
2. If the item is located in a microfiche collection and filed by microfiche number, enter the location MF and the microfiche number in this field.
3. If different copies of the item are located in different collections, enter each location. Separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Note If the centre is in the practice of keeping some items in both hardcopy (arranged under call number) and microfiche (filed by microfiche number), enter the microfiche number before the other locations (see example 4 below).

Examples

1. There is only one copy of the item and it is kept in the Reference collection.
Enter: REF
2. One copy of the item is kept in the main collection and another copy is kept in the reference collection.
Enter: MAIN%REF
3. The item is filed in the microfiche collection and numbered 0102.
Enter: MF0102
4. One copy of the item is kept in the main collection and a microfiche version of it is number 0039 in the microfiche collection.
Enter: MF0039%MAIN

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

Field 411 is used to enter the call number of item. The call number is composed of a classification code indicating the subject of the item, and a shelf number, distinguishing among items with the same classification code.

Well-known classification schemes include the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC), the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), and the Library of Congress Classification (LC). Some documentation centres adopt the classification scheme used to group the descriptors in their thesaurus as a classification scheme for their collection.

Most schemes for shelf numbers are based on the first three letters of the name of the author.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the classification number that has been assigned to the item, followed by a space and the shelf number.

Example

341.1 UNI

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, **field 411** appears after **field 410**, separated by one space.

Example

REF 341.1 UNI

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 412 is used to indicate the number of copies of the item held in the library.

It is entered at the cataloguing stage and should not be confused with **field 513**, which is used at the acquisitions stage to indicate the number of copies on order.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the total number of copies of the item held by the library, regardless of format.

Examples

1. The library holds one copy of the item.

Enter: 1

2. The library holds one hardcopy and one microfiche copy of the item.

Enter: 2

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 413 is used to indicate the accession number(s) assigned to the items described in the bibliographic record.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter each accession number as a separate occurrence.

Examples

1. The library holds one copy of a monograph. It has been stamped with accession number 153429.
Enter: 153429
2. The library holds one copy of each volume of a three-volume collection. They have been given accession numbers 832, 833, and 834.
Enter: 832%833%834
3. The library holds one copy of volume 1, and 2 copies of volume 2 in a two-volume collection. The items have been given accession numbers 9234, 9235, and 9236.
Enter: 9234%9235%9236

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 4

PURPOSE

In a system where statistics on the types of material held in the collection are required, **field 420** is used to enter a code indicating the type of material.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Each documentation centre will draw up its own list of codes corresponding to the types of material it needs to identify.

Codes could include:

PER	Periodical article
MONO	Monograph
PART	Part of a monograph or collection
THES	Thesis
REP	Report
UND	United Nations document

2. Select **one** code from the list. When the item belongs to more than one type, choose a type according to local priorities.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 430 is used to identify the documentalist(s) who created the record.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the name or initials of the documentalist(s).
2. If more than one name is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

1. One documentalist was responsible for both cataloguing and indexing the item.
Enter: B. Baker
2. One documentalist was responsible for cataloguing the item and another was responsible for indexing it.
Enter: AS%SF

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 4

PURPOSE

Field 500 is used to indicate whether the item was acquired through purchase, as part of a subscription, free, or on exchange.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Each documentation centre will draw up its own set of codes to indicate acquisition type.

These could include:

PUR Purchased

SUB Acquired as part of a subscription

FREE Acquired free

EXCH Acquired under an exchange agreement

2. Enter the code that corresponds to the manner of acquiring the item.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 510 is used to enter the date on which the item was ordered or requested.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the item was ordered or requested in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Examples

1. The record is created and a computer-produced purchase order generated on 24th June 1993.

Enter: 1993-06-24

2. A form letter requesting the item free of charge is sent out on 3rd May 1993.

Enter: 1993-05-03

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

If your system produces computer-generated order forms, the system will enter the date into this field when the order is created.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

When an item that is on order has not been received within a certain period, **field 511** is used to enter the date on which a reminder was sent to the supplier.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the reminder was sent in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Example

A reminder is sent to the supplier on 14th November 1993.

Enter: 1993-11-14

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

If your system produces computer-generated claims for overdue orders, the system will enter the date into this field when the report is created.

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 512 is used to enter the date on which the item was received.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the item was received in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Example

The item was received on 1st December 1993.

Enter: 1993-12-01

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 513 is used to enter the number of copies of the item that have been ordered.

It should not be confused with **field 412**, which is entered at the cataloguing stage to indicate the number of copies of the item held in the library.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the number of copies ordered.

Example

Two copies have been ordered.

Enter: 2

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 25

PURPOSE

Field 514 is used to enter the name of the person(s) who asked the library to order the item, so that, when the item is received, the requester may be informed.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the name of the person who requested the item.
2. If more than one name is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

The item was requested by Mr M. Rahman.

Enter: M. Rahman

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Option 1

Not subfielded

Option 2

Subfielded ^a Supplier name
 ^b Address – line 1
 ^c Address – line 2
 ^d Address – line 3
 ^e Country

Option 3

Subfielded ^z Supplier code

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 515 is used to enter the name and, if desired, the address of the body from whom the item has been requested. The supplier may be an agent, the publisher, or the issuing organization.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**Option 1: manual ordering system**

1. Enter the name of the agency to whom the purchase order or request letter is to be sent.
2. If the item was unsolicited, enter the name of the agency that donated the item.
3. If necessary to identify the body, add the name of the city.

Examples

Starkmann

FAO

Institute of Development Studies, Brighton

Option 2: computer-printed orders with manual supplier authority file

If purchase orders are computer-printed, enter the name of the supplier in **subfield a**, the address as it should appear on a letter in **subfields b to d**, and the country in **subfield e**.

Example

^aIntermediate Technology Publications Ltd.^b9 King
Street^cLondon WC2E 8HN^eEngland

Option 3: computerized supplier authority records

If the purchase orders are computer-printed, and if the volume of ordering warrants it, computerized supplier authority records may be used, as described in **Annex 6**.

Enter a short alphabetic code representing the name of the supplier in **subfield z** of **field 515** instead of the full name and address of the supplier. Whenever the record is used to print a purchase order, the full name and address from the authority record is printed, instead of the code.

Example

^zITEC

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. When using a computerized supplier authority file, make sure that the supplier authority file record exists for the supplier. If it does not already exist, create it first. Then proceed to create the bibliographic record. Failure to first enter the authority records will result in the supplier not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record. Refer to **Annex 19 — Section IX, Inversion** for more information.
2. On computer-printed purchase orders, each subfield will be printed on a new line.

Example

Intermediate Technology Publications Ltd.
9 King Street
London WC2E 8HN
England

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Subfielded ^a Price
 ^b Currency

Maximum length 20

PURPOSE

Field 516 is used, when the item is purchased, to enter the price of the item.

SELECTION

1. At the time of ordering, enter the estimated price, if it can be determined.
2. When the item is received, replace the estimated price with the actual price.
3. If more than one copy of the item has been ordered, enter the total price.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the price in **subfield a**. Use a decimal point to separate pounds from pence, dollars from cents, francs from centimes, etc. Do not use any punctuation to separate thousands from hundreds.
2. Indicate the currency in **subfield b**. This may either be entered in free form, or using the appropriate ISO currency code.²⁵

Examples

^a22.50^bUSD

^a50000^bLIT

^a40^bFS

²⁵ International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Currencies and Funds*. 2nd ed. Geneva, ISO, 1981. (ISO 4217)

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 517 is used to enter notes relating to the order for the item.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter such information as:
 - the source of information concerning the item (so that it can be referred to again if necessary), and
 - the status of the order (as reported by the supplier), and a record of action taken. Include the date of the report or action, in the form YYYY-MM-DD.
2. Use standard book trade abbreviations such as:

BO	Back ordered
NOP	Not our publication
NYP	Not yet published
OP	Out of print
OS	Out of stock
3. Enter a period and a space after each note except the last.

Examples

ACCIS newsletter, v. 6. no. 3, Sept 1988

Prepayment

Reported NYP 1994-01-14. Due to be published June 1994

Reported OP 1993-12-01

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential if the database also contains computerized authority records)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

Field 999 is used to indicate whether the record being entered is a bibliographic record or one of the several kinds of authority records described in **Annexes 2, 4, and 6**.

SELECTION

Select one of the following record types:

- B** Bibliographic record (**fields 001 to 517**)
- C** Corporate name authority record (**fields 901 to 905 and 997 to 998**, described in **Annex 2**)
- S** Serials authority record (**fields 911 to 916 and 997 to 998**, described in **Annex 4**)
- X** Supplier authority record (**fields 921 to 922 and 997 to 998**, described in **Annex 6**)

DATA ENTRY

The correct code should already be present as a default value for this field in each of the data entry worksheets used for entering the records on-line.

Do not delete or change the code already present as a default value for this field.

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

The guidelines in this annex are to be used for entering fields:

110 Personal author(s)

210 Personal author(s) - parent

I PERSONAL NAME AUTHORITY FILE

A documentation centre that frequently encounters complex personal author names should keep a personal name authority file to ensure that authors' names are cited in a consistent manner. The file will probably be maintained in the form of a card index.

The card index will have entries for the correct form of name and "see" references from other possible forms of the name. The card for the correct form of the name will also show the forms of the name from which "see" references have been made, preceded by "X".

Example

For the name Abdullah bin Nuh, three cards will be required — one card filed under the authoritative form of the name, and two cards for "see" references from each of the other two possible forms. The card filed under the correct form of the name will show the forms of the name from which references have been made, preceded by "X".

Card 1

Abdullah bin Nuh
X bin Nuh, Abdullah
Nuh, Abdullah bin

Card 2

bin Nuh, Abdullah
See: Abdullah bin Nuh

Card 3

Nuh, Abdullah bin
See: Abdullah bin Nuh

II RULES FOR FORM OF PERSONAL AUTHOR NAME

As the basis for the rules for form of personal name, the following sources have been used:

Morin-Labatut, Gisèle, and Sly, Maureen. *Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems*. Ottawa, IDRC, 1982. (IDRC-TS40e), p. 46–57.

Anglo-American cataloguing rules, 2nd ed. Chicago, American Library Association, 1978. Chapter 22. (AACR2)

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Names of persons: national usages for entry in catalogues*, 3rd ed. London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1977.

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Supplement to Names of persons: national usages for entry in catalogues*. London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1980.

1 General Rules

- 1.1 Enter the element that is considered to be the surname or family name first, followed by a comma and a space and the remaining elements of the name. The part of the name that is entered first is called the “entry element”.

Option

Individual documentation centres may decide to enter only the initials of forenames after the surname.

Examples

Kelly, Edward J.
Mkamwa, John
Ong, Shao Er
Penning de Vries, F.

- 1.2 Do not add indications of rank, such as General, Professor, or Doctor.

2 Determining Entry Element

- 2.1 Treat as the entry element, the part of the name that the author treats as his or her family name or surname. This can often be determined:
- by looking for references to the author in the item itself (for example, in the bibliography and in the preface or other introductory matter). Note that sometimes the author's surname is in upper case on the title page.
 - by consulting the national bibliography of the author's country.
- 2.2 When it is not evident which part of the name should be used as the entry element, follow the rules below.

3 European Names Except Portuguese and Spanish

Note For Portuguese and Spanish names, see paragraphs 4 and 5 below.

3.1 Entry Element

The entry element is the surname or family name, which is the last element in the name.

Examples

Blair, Angus
Lacroix, Yolande
Calvino, Italo
Fuchs, Ingrid

3.2 Compound names

The entry element may be a compound surname. The parts of compound names are often, but not always, joined by a hyphen. Enter compound names under the first element of the compound.

Examples

Mignot-Lefebvre, Marguerite
Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
Bonham Carter, Mark

3.3 Compound surnames containing prefixes

In AACR2 and in national cataloguing rules of European countries, prefixes are treated differently according to the nationality of the author. For example, an English-speaking author named Charles De La Salle is entered as: De La Salle, Charles; whereas a French-speaking author with the same name is entered as: La Salle, Charles de.

Because it is not always easy to determine the nationality of the author, and therefore to determine how a name containing a prefix should be treated, two options for the treatment of such names have been provided.

Option 1

Use the following simplified rules for treatment of names containing prefixes.

a) Enter surnames beginning with the following prefixes under the prefix.

am	des	las	ver
de	di	le	vom
del	du	les	zum
della	l'	li	zur
delle	la	los	

Examples

Am Rhyn, August
Di Giacomo, Salvatore
De la Fontaine, Jean
Ver Boven, Aja

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

- b) Enter surnames beginning with the following prefixes under the part of the surname following the prefix.

af	ten	van den	von der
den	ter	van der	
op de	van	von	

Examples

Beek, Leo op de
Brink, Jan ten
Hagen, Friedrich von der
Hallstrom, Gunnar af

Option 2

Follow the rules in chapter 22 of AACR2 and in Names of persons for the treatment of prefixes. These are:

- a) English-speaking countries

Enter surnames beginning with a preposition under the preposition.

Examples

De la Mare, Walter
Van Doren, Mark

- b) France

Enter surnames beginning with “de” under the part of the name following the preposition. Enter surnames beginning with other prefixes under the prefix.

Examples

Beauvoir, Simone de
Des Granges, Charles-Marc
Le Cordier, Roland
La Fontaine, Jean de

- c) Germany and Austria

Follow the same rules as for Option 1.

Examples

Hagen, Friedrich von der
Schack, Adolf von
Vom Ende, Erich

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

d) Italy

Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples

De Amicis, Edmondo

Di Camerino, Roberta

e) Netherlands

Follow the same rules as for Option 1.

Examples

Ver Huell, Carel

Brink, Jan ten

f) Denmark, Norway, and Sweden

Enter surnames beginning with a prefix of Germanic origin, such as “von”, “der”, “af”, under the part of the name following the prefix. Enter surnames beginning with other kinds of prefix under the prefix.

Examples

Geijerstam, Gustav af

Recke, Ernest von der

De la Gardie, Magnus Gabriel

4 Portuguese Names

4.1 Enter Portuguese names under the last element of the family name.

Examples

Castro, Antonio Pires de

Silva, Ovidio Saraiva de Carvalho e

4.2 When the last element of the family name is a qualifier indicating a family relationship, such as Filho, Júnior, Neto, or Sobrinho, enter under the second last element of the name.

Examples

Vidal Neto, Victor

Castro Sobrinho, António Ribeiro de

4.3 In former Portuguese colonies, however, the qualifier (Filho, Júnior, Neto, and Sobrinho) sometimes constitutes the family name.

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Examples

Neto, António Luis

Sobrinho, Jorge

- 4.4 Enter a simple surname beginning with a prefix under the part following the prefix.

Example

Fonseca, Martinho Augusto da

5 Spanish Names

- 5.1 Compound Spanish surnames usually consist of the father's name followed by the mother's name. A married woman may add, after these elements, the preposition "de" and her husband's name.

Examples

Francisco Rodriguez Marin

Marcelino Menéndez y Pelayo

Elena Torres Garcia de Urbina

- 5.2 Enter compound Spanish names under the first element of the surname. This is usually the second last element of the name, but may be, in the case of married women using all three name elements, the third last element.

Examples

Rodriguez Marin, Francisco

Menéndez y Pelayo, Marcelino

Torres Garcia de Urbina, Elena

- 5.3 Sometimes Spanish authors give only the initial of the last element of the name. If it is not possible to determine the full form of the name, enter it in the form found on the document.

Example

Isaza V., Guillermo

- 5.4 Enter a surname beginning with a prefix consisting only of an article, such as "Las", under the prefix.

Example

Las Heras, Manuel

- 5.5 Enter surnames beginning with a prefix consisting of a preposition, or a preposition and an article, under the part of the name following the prefix.

Examples

Vega, Francisco de la

Pereda, José Maria de

6 African Names

6.1 Botswana

Enter under the last part of the name.

Example

Name: Tebogo Kagiso Pule

Enter: Pule, Tebogo Kagiso

6.2 Burkina Faso

Enter under the last part of the name. Do not separate hyphenated compound names.

Examples

Name: Joseph Ki-Zerbo

Enter: Ki-Zerbo, Joseph

Name: Cheik Ousman Diallo

Enter: Diallo, Cheik Ousman

6.3 Burundi

Enter under the last part of the name. Do not separate hyphenated compound surnames.

Examples

Name: Emile Hatungimana

Enter: Hatungimana, Emile

Name: Cyriaque Vyanka-Ndondera

Enter: Vyanka-Ndondera, Cyriaque

6.4 Cameroon

Enter under patronymic, i.e., the part of the name that follows a forename of European or Islamic origin.

Examples

Name: Ousmane Mey

Enter: Mey, Ousmane

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Name: Mathias Makang Ma Mbock
Enter: Makang Ma Mbock, Mathias

6.5 Chad

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Sou Ngonn Sou
Enter: Sou Ngonn Sou

Name: Bongbanda Hogra
Enter: Bongbanda Hogra

6.6 Côte d'Ivoire

Enter under patronymic, which is usually the first element of the name. Insert a comma after the patronymic.

Examples

Name: Assouan Akassiba
Enter: Assouan, Akassiba

Name: Amoikon Aka N'da
Enter: Amoikon, Aka N'da

6.7 Ethiopia

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Ermias Kebreab
Enter: Ermias Kebreab

Name: Eshetu Habte Georgis
Enter: Eshetu Habte Georgis

6.8 The Gambia

Enter under patronymic. This is usually the last element.

Example

Name: Seydou N'jie Badjan
Enter: Badjan, Seydou N'jie

6.9 Ghana

Enter under surname, which is the last element in the name. Enter compound surnames under the first part of the compound. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Kweku Dua-Agyemang
Enter: Dua-Agyemang, Kweku

Name: Daniel Kojo Da Rocha
Enter: Da Rocha, Daniel Kojo

6.10 Kenya

a) Afro-Asiatic group of languages (Somali, Borana, etc.)

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Yusuf Hassan
Enter: Yusuf Hassan

Name: Amina Inan Ali
Enter: Amina Inan Ali

b) Bantu group of languages

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Munyao wa Musau
Enter: Musau, Munyao wa

Name: James Musau Munyao Mula
Enter: Mula, James Musau Munyao

c) Kalenjin; Luo

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: John Ongayo Kokwaro
Enter: Kokwaro, John Ongayo

Name: Arphaxao Kipruto arap Maiyo
Enter: Maiyo, Arphaxao Kipruto arap

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

d) Pokot

Enter under the parts of the name following a forename of foreign origin, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Ruth Chenanga Chepo Kapelion

Enter: Chenanga Chepo Kapelion, Ruth

Name: Peter Pseret Endoo

Enter: Pseret Endoo, Peter

e) Banjuni group of languages (Kiamu and Swahili)

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Example

Name: Athman bin Lali Omar

Enter: Athman bin Lali Omar

6.11 Mauritania

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Moktar Ould Haiba

Enter: Moktar Ould Haiba

Name: Ahmed Ould Djeddou

Enter: Ahmed Ould Djeddou

6.12 Nigeria

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Chinua Achebe

Enter: Achebe, Chinua

Name: Abubakar Babba-Innar

Enter: Babba-Innar, Abubakar

6.13 Senegal

Enter under patronymic, which is usually the last element of the name, and include terms of respect, such as “Adjaratou” and “El Hadj”, as in the examples.

Examples

Name: Amadou Ndiaye Samb
Enter: Samb, Amadou Ndiaye

Name: El Hadj Assane Diop
Enter: Diop, El Hadj Assane

Name: Adjaratou Magatte Sall Ndiaye
Enter: Ndiaye, Adjaratou Magatte Sall

6.14 Tanzania

a) Names in Western form

Enter under surname. Enter a surname beginning with a prefix under the prefix. Enter a compound surname under the last element of the name.

Example (surname beginning with a prefix)

Name: R.K. Che Kondo
Enter: Che Kondo, R.K.

Examples (compound name)

Name: Julius Kambarage Nyerere
Enter: Nyerere, Julius Kambarage

Name: B.B. Ngene wa Mapua
Enter: Mapua, B.B. Ngene wa

b) Islamic and tribal forms

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Hasani bini Ismail
Enter: Hasani bini Ismail

Name: Kiziku wa Maziku
Enter: Kiziku wa Maziku

6.15 Uganda

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Tucker Lwanga
Enter: Lwanga, Tucker

Name: Okot p'Bitek
Enter: p'Bitek, Okot

Name: John Kibuka-Musoke
Enter: Kibuka-Musoke, John

6.16 Zaire

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Ilanga Nyonschi
Enter: Ilanga Nyonschi

Name: Lumpungu Kamanda
Enter: Lumpungu Kamanda

6.17 Zambia

Enter under the last element of the name.

Example

Name: Samual Samusungwa
Enter: Samusungwa, Samual

7 Arabic Names

7.1 When an Arabic name has only two elements, the second element is the family name.

Examples

Name: Fatimah Barakat
Enter: Barakat, Fatimah

Name: Jamil Mattar
Enter: Mattar, Jamil

7.2 Compound names containing prefixes

Enter compound family names containing the prefixes Al, El, Abou, Abun, Abdul, Abdel, Ben, or Ibn under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Abbas Mahmud Al'Akkad
Enter: Al'Akkad, Abbas Mahmud

Name: Tahir Abdul Hakim
Enter: Abdul Hakim, Tahir

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Name: Abdul Rahman Ibn Khaldoun
Enter: Ibn Khaldoun, Abdul Rahman

7.3 Compound names containing suffixes

The phrase “El-Dine” and its variants (al-din, al-Din, etc.) is a suffix and is, therefore, always the second part of a family name or of a given name.

Examples

Name: Kheir El-Dine Raouf
Enter: Raouf, Kheir El-Dine

Name: Muhammad Sadr al-Din
Enter: Sadr al-Din, Muhammad

8 Asian names

8.1 Bangladesh

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Anwar Pasha
Enter: Pasha, Anwar

Name: Rabindra Bijay Barua
Enter: Barua, Rabindra Bijay

8.2 Burma

See Myanmar

8.3 Chinese names

Enter under the family name, which is the first element of the name. Insert a comma after the family name.

Examples

Name: Lee Hon-ling
Enter: Lee, Hon-ling

Name: Li Xuezheng
Enter: Li, Xuezheng

Name: Lim Hong Too
Enter: Lim, Hong Too

Note Chinese living abroad or writing for a Western audience frequently reverse the traditional order of their name.

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Example

Name: Ching-chih Chen
Enter: Chen, Ching-chih

When a Western forename is added, enter it before the Chinese forenames.

Example

Name: Philip Loh Fook Seng
Enter: Loh, Philip Fook Seng

8.4 India

- a) Punjabi names (i.e., names containing “Singh”)

Enter under the first element, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Surjit Singh Sethi
Enter: Surjit Singh Sethi

Name: Trilok Singh
Enter: Trilok Singh

- b) Other names

When parts of the name have been reduced to initials, enter under the part of the name written in full. If it is not clear which part of the name should be the entry element, enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: V.K.P. Rao
Enter: Rao, V.K.P.

Name: C.P. Ramaswamy Ayyar
Enter: Ramaswamy Ayyar, C.P.

Name: Subhash Chandra Bose
Enter: Bose, Subhash Chandra

8.5 Indonesia

Enter names containing terms of relationship, such as bin, binte, binti, or ibni, under the first element, in direct order.

Example

Name: Abdullah bin Nuh
Enter: Abdullah bin Nuh

ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Enter other names under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Amir Taat Nasution

Enter: Nasution, Amir Taat

Name: Nani Suwondo-Surasno

Enter: Suwondo-Surasno, Nani

8.6 Japan

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Itsue Takamure

Enter: Takamure, Itsue

Name: Hiroko Ozaki

Enter: Ozaki, Hiroko

8.7 Korea

Treat Korean names in the same way as Chinese names.

Examples

Name: Kim Ku

Enter: Kim, Ku

Name: Koh Hoe-Young

Enter: Koh, Hoe-Young

8.8 Malay names

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order. However, if it is known that the person treats another element of the name as the surname, treat that part as the entry element.

Examples

Name: Abdullah Sanusi bin Ahmad

Enter: Abdullah Sanusi bin Ahmad

Name: Fatimah Husain

Enter: Fatimah Husain

Name: A. Samad Said

Enter: A. Samad Said

Name: Faridah Merican (uses the second element as surname)

Enter: Merican, Faridah

8.9 Myanmar

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order, unless the first element is a Western forename. Terms of address, such as U, Daw, Ko, Ma, Maung, Bo, and Saya, are entered after the name, preceded by a comma.

Examples

Name: U Thant
Enter: Thant, U

Name: Freddie Ba Hli
Enter: Ba Hli, Freddie

Name: Maung Hla Htun
Enter: Hla Htun, Maung

8.10 Pakistan

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Anwarul Haque Chaudhri
Enter: Chaudhri, Anwarul Haque

Name: Muhammed Husayn
Enter: Husayn, Muhammed

However, names consisting of two personal names, of which the first is not Muhammad, or a variant form of Muhammad, are entered under the first name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Hazrat Ali
Enter: Hazrat Ali

Name: Noor Mohammad
Enter: Noor Mohammad

8.11 Philippines

Enter compound surnames under the first element of the compound. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Pedro Pe Benito
Enter: Pe Benito, Pedro

Name: Horacio de la Costa
Enter: de la Costa, Horacio

8.12 Sri Lanka

Enter under the last element of the name. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix. When the last element of the name is preceded by a name of Western origin, thus making a compound surname, enter under the first element of the compound.

Examples

Name: Ratne Welikala

Enter: Welikala, Ratne

Name: Lal Premnath De Mel

Enter: De Mel, Lal Premnath

Name: D.F. De Silva Guneratne

Enter: De Silva Guneratne, D.F.

8.13 Thailand

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Nilawan Pinthong

Enter: Nilawan Pinthong

Name: Maria Laosunthara

Enter: Maria Laosunthara

8.14 Vietnam

Enter under the last element of the name, which is the personal name.

Note The first element of the name is the family name, but this is not used as the entry element.

Example

Name: Nguyen Dinh Thi

Enter: Thi, Nguyen Dinh

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

A corporate body is an organization or group of persons that is identified by a particular name and that acts collectively. Corporate bodies include institutions, governments, international organizations, religious bodies, associations, and business firms.

Examples

National Research Council
Asian and Pacific Skill Development Programme
Unesco
Brasil. Secretaria Especial do Meio Ambiente
Universidad Católica Boliviana
Bibliothèque Nationale Suisse

To promote consistency in the way corporate bodies are entered in the bibliographic records, you are strongly advised to maintain an authority file for the names of corporate bodies.

The rules in this annex are for the establishment of entries in the Corporate Name Authority File, which will be consulted for the correct form of entry (i.e., the form of the name established for use in a particular system) for the following fields:

- 111** — Corporate author(s)
- 112** — Affiliation
- 113** — Other associated institution(s)
- 211** — Corporate author(s) - parent

I FORM OF THE CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

The Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF) may take the form either of a card index or of a computerized file. The decision as to form will depend on the size of the bibliographic database, and the amount of computer storage space available.

For the sake of simplicity, the examples of entries and cross references given in the “Rules for names of corporate bodies” section of this annex take the form of entries in a card index.

1 Corporate Name Authority File in the Form of a Card Index

The Corporate Name Authority File in the form of a card index will contain entries for the correct form of the name of each body, interfiled with cross references from variant forms of the name.

The card for the correct form of the name will show the forms of the name from which references have been made, preceded by “X”. This allows all of the cards to be traced if an entry needs to be changed. It will also show the date on which the entry was established.

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

Example

Card 1

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo

X IDRC

1988-01-14

Card 2

IDRC

See: International Development Research Centre

Card 3

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International,
Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo
International Development Research Centre

X CRDI

1988-01-14

Card 4

CRDI

See: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International

Card 5

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo,
Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
International Development Research Centre

X CIID

1988-01-14

Card 6

CIID

See: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo

2 Computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

In MICRO-ISIS, corporate name authority records may be created in the bibliographic database, allowing a code representing the corporate body name (in fact, the MFN of the authority record) to be entered in **subfield z** of the appropriate field in the bibliographic record, instead of the name in full. When the bibliographic record is displayed or printed, the full name of the corporate body appears in place of the code. The advantages of computerized authority records are described in the **Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records.**

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

Here is a list of fields required in the corporate name authority record.

Corporate Name Authority Records

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Repeatable	Length	Inversion
901	Corporate body	^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code		500	^a 4 ^b 4
902	See reference(s)		R	500	4
903	Other language version(s)		R	500	
904	Former name(s)		R	500	
905	Later name(s)		R	500	
997	Authority record notes			200	
998	Authority record date			10	
999	Record type			1	0

The significant words in **fields 901** and **902** may be inverted for retrieval (using MICRO-ISIS indexing technique 4). Both fields will be inverted with the field identifier 901.

Fields 902 to **905** will contain the cross references.

Field 997 will contain information such as the source in which the correct form of the name was verified and other information about changes of name.

Field 998 will contain the date the record was created or the date on which it was last changed. The date is entered in the form YYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year-month-day, as in the examples below.

For corporate authority records, **field 999** will always contain the code C.

Examples

MFN 2

901 ^aInternational Development Research Centre^cOttawa, ON^dCA
902 IDRC
903 Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International%Centro
Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
997 Source: its annual report
998 1988-01-14
999 C

MFN 5

901 ^aCentre de Recherches pour le Développement
International^cOttawa, ON^dCA
902 CRDI
903 International Development Research Centre%Centro Internacional
de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
997 Source: its annual report
998 1988-01-14
999 C

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

MFN 6

901 ^aCentro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo^cOttawa, ON^dCA
902 CIID
903 International Development Research Centre%Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International
997 Source: its annual report
998 1988-01-14
999 C

MFN 11

901 ^aECAFE^cBangkok^dTH
902 Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East%UN. Economic
Commission for Asia and the Far East
905 ESCAP
997 Name changed in 1974
998 1987-10-01
999 C

MFN 3

901 ^aESCAP^cBangkok^dTH
902 Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific%UN.
Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
904 ECAFE
997 Name changed in 1974. Source: Ybk of Int Orgs
998 1987-10-01
999 C

MFN 4

901 ^aNigeria. Federal Office of Statistics^bSurvey Organization
and Methods Division^dNG
998 1988-04-12
999 C

A printed version of the authority file may be produced by interfiling **fields 901** and **902**, as in the following example where the parenthetical numbers are MFNs.²⁶

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International, Ottawa, ON CA
(5)

OTHER LANG: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo
International Development Research Centre

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo, Ottawa, ON
CA (6)

OTHER LANG: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
International Development Research Centre

²⁶ To produce this kind of corporate authority index in MICRO-ISIS, use the special program CORP on the accompanying diskette (output is **Annex 19**, example 14).

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

CIID

SEE: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
(6)

CRDI

SEE: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International
(5)

ECAFE, Bangkok TH (11)

SEE ALSO LATER NAME: ESCAP

Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific

SEE: ESCAP (3)

Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East

SEE: ECAFE (11)

ESCAP, Bangkok TH (3)

SEE ALSO EARLIER NAME: ECAFE

IDRC

SEE: International Development Research Centre (2)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (2)

OTHER LANG: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo

Nigeria. Federal Office of Statistics. Survey Organization and Methods
Division NG (4)

UN. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific

SEE: ESCAP (3)

UN. Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East

SEE: ECAFE (11)

II RULES FOR NAMES OF CORPORATE BODIES

Note The corporate name authority entry comprises the name of the corporate body, its location (town or city), and the ISO two-letter country code corresponding to the country in which it is located.

The rules for names of corporate bodies are based on the Rules for Form of Institution Name in *Guidelines for the building of authority files in development-information systems*,²⁷ which were in turn based on chapter 24 of AACR2.²⁸

²⁷ Di Lauro, Anne, and Sly, Maureen. *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*. Ottawa, IDRC, 1985. (IDRC-TS52e)

²⁸ *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed. Chicago, American Library Association, 1978.

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

There are two slight differences between the rules in this annex and those in chapter 24 of AACR2:

- 1) Although AACR2 treats projects and conferences as types of corporate body, they are not included in these rules because in this manual they are entered in separate fields.
- 2) The kind of subordinate body that does not normally have a distinctive name, such as a library serving an organization, or a department or school of a university, is entered as a subheading under the name of the parent body, even if it has a distinctive name. An exception is made, however, if the subordinate body is better known under its own name (see **Section 7 — Subordinate bodies**, below).

1 General Rule

Enter a corporate body under its own name, unless the rules in Sections 7 and 9 provide for entering it as a subheading under the name of the parent body.

Consult reference sources to verify the official form of the name. Useful reference sources²⁹ include:

Europa Yearbook
United Nations Handbook
World of Learning
Yearbook of International Organizations
national bibliographies
official publications of the body itself

2 Language of the Name of the Body

Note For choice of language for names of governments, see **Section 9 — Government bodies**, below.

- 2.1** Enter the name of the body in its official language.

Example

An item written in English by the Royal Tropical Institute in Amsterdam bears the name of the body in both English and Dutch. The official language of the institute is Dutch.

Enter the name of the body in its official language:

Koninklijk Instituut voor de Tropen

- 2.2** If it is not possible to verify the official language version of the name, use the version found on the item in hand.

²⁹ For full bibliographic details, see the **Annex 16, Bibliography**.

Example

The item is in English, and the corporate author, the Finnish Foundation of Alcohol Studies, is cited only in English. The name of the body in its official language is not found in available references.

The body is therefore entered as:

Finnish Foundation of Alcohol Studies

- 2.3** If the only official version of the name is in a non-Roman alphabet, you may choose either to transliterate the name using available international standards, or use a translation of the name found on the item or in reference sources.³⁰

Examples

Either: Nihon Seisansei Hombu

Or: Japan Productivity Centre

Either: Rossiiskaia Akademiia Nauk

Or: Russian Academy of Sciences

- 2.4** If the body has an official name in more than one language, choose one of the **Options** below.

Option 1: unilingual information systems

- a) If the body has an official name in more than one language, select the official language version of the name that corresponds to the language of the system.

Example

The language of the system is English. The body has three official language versions of its name — English, French, and Spanish.

Use the English version of the name for all items by the body, regardless of the language in which the items are written:

International Hotel Association

- b) If none of the official language versions of the name corresponds to the language of the system, select the official language version that is best understood by the users of the system.

Example

The language of the system is English. The body has two official language forms of its name — Arabic and French.

Use the French form of the name.

³⁰ International standards for the transliteration of Arabic, Chinese, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, and Japanese are listed in the bibliography under the International Organization for Standardization.

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

- c) Make a “See” reference in the authority file from each of the language versions not used.

Examples

Asociación Internacional de Hostelería
See: International Hotel Association

Association Internationale de l'Hôtellerie
See: International Hotel Association

Option 2: multilingual information systems

- a) If the body has an official name in more than one language, establish an entry in the Corporate Name Authority File for each of the official language versions that correspond to the languages of the system.

Example

The languages of the system are English and French. The body has an official name in English, French, and Spanish.

Make an entry in the authority file for both the English and the French versions of the name.

- b) Make a “See also” reference from each official language version selected to the other selected language versions; and make a “See” reference from any language versions not selected to the selected language versions.

Examples

Card 1

Asociación Internacional de Hostelería
See: Association Internationale de l'Hôtellerie
International Hotel Association

Card 2

Association Internationale de l'Hôtellerie
Other lang: International Hotel Association
X Asociación Internacional de Hostelería

Card 3

International Hotel Association
Other lang: Association Internationale de l'Hôtellerie
X Asociación Internacional de Hostelería

3 Changes of Name

If a body changes its name, retain the entry in the authority file under its former name and make a new entry in the authority file for the new name of the body. Make “See also” references between the two names.

Example

ECAFE

See also later name: ESCAP

ESCAP

See also former name: ECAFE

4 Acronyms

- 4.1 When the only official name of an organization is an acronym, use the acronym.

Example

OXFAM

- 4.2 When the body is an international organization that is known internationally by its official acronym, use the acronym rather than the full name of the body. It is recommended that you use the acronyms listed in **Annex 12**.

Examples

ECA

IFLA

UNICEF

- 4.3 Do not enter periods or spaces within an acronym.

Example

OECD

(not O.E.C.D or O. E. C. D.)

- 4.4 In the authority file, make a “See” reference from the full form of the name to the acronym.

Example

Association of South East Asian Nations

See: ASEAN

5 Additions to Names

If necessary to show the nature of the body, add terms such as “Firm” in parentheses after the name of the body. Enter the term in the language of the corporate body name. If this is not possible, enter it in one of the languages of the system.

Examples

J. Whitaker (Firm)
Jacques Esterel (Firme)
Socometal (Firma)

6 Omissions from Names

Omit terms such as Inc., S.A., and Ltd. from the name unless they are needed to show that the name refers to a corporate body.

Examples

Compañía Internacional Editora (omit S.A.)
but: Mineral Systems, Inc.

7 Subordinate Bodies

A subordinate body is a body that is part of a larger corporate body.

Note Section 7 provides general rules for the treatment of subordinate bodies. See also Section 9 for the treatment of subordinate government bodies.

7.1 Enter a subordinate body as a subheading under the parent body if it is one of the following:

- a)** A department, division, branch, section, office, or unit of the parent body.

Examples

UN. Population Division
ONU. Bureau de Statistique
Special Libraries Association. Education Division
WHO. Regional Office for Africa

- b)** A faculty, school, institute, department, or research centre of a university.

Examples

Université Catholique de Louvain. Département de
Démographie
Australian National University. Research School of Social
Sciences

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

However, if an institute, research centre, or school has a distinctive name and is better known under its own name than under the name of the university, enter it directly under its own name.

Example

London School of Economics is better known under its own name than under the name of the body of which it is part (University of London).

- c) A library or laboratory serving the needs of the institution to which it is attached.

Example

UN. Dag Hammarskjöld Library

- d) A committee or commission established by the parent body. (For joint committees, i.e., those with two or more parent bodies, see Section 8.)

Example

UN. Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space

- 7.2 When there are several hierarchical elements in the name of the body, omit intervening levels that are not necessary to identify the body.

Example

Hierarchy: United Nations
Economic and Social Council
Statistical Commission

Enter: UN. Statistical Commission

- 7.3 If the name of the body contains two or more hierarchical levels, the parent body is entered in **subfield a** of the appropriate field in the bibliographic record. The other elements are entered in **subfield b**, separated by a period and a space. When the field is printed or displayed, a period and a space are inserted between **subfield a** and **subfield b**.

In the computerized Corporate Name Authority Records described at the beginning of this annex, the parent body is entered in **subfield a** of **field 901** and the subordinate bodies are entered in **subfield b**.

Note The name of a government is not considered to be a hierarchical level on its own. (See the third example below.)

Examples

^aAmerican Library Association^bResources and Technical Services
Division. Board of Directors

^aUN^bStatistical Commission

^aUnited States. Department of Energy^bWind Energy Technology
Division

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

8 Joint Bodies

- 8.1 Enter a body made up of representatives of two or more other bodies under its own name. Make appropriate "See" references, as in the example below.

Example

Card 1

Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
X ECA. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
X FAO. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

Card 2

ECA. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
See: Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

Card 3

FAO. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
See: Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

- 8.2 However, if a joint body is made up of parts of the same parent body, enter it as a subheading under the name of the parent body.

Example

The Joint Committee to Compile a List of International Subscription Agents is made up of representatives of three branches of the American Library Association. Enter the joint committee as:

American Library Association. Joint Committee to Compile a List of International Subscription Agents

9 Government Bodies

A government body is a body created or controlled by a government.

- 9.1 Enter a government body directly under its own name unless the name of the body indicates that it has an administrative, legislative, or judicial function (i.e., government ministries, etc.).

(See Sections 9.2 to 9.6 below for the treatment of government bodies that have administrative, legislative or judicial functions.)

Examples of government bodies entered directly under their own name

Oak Ridge National Laboratory
Overseas Development Institute
National Centre for Health Statistics

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

British Library

Institut National de la Statistique et des Etudes Economiques

- 9.2** Enter a government body whose name indicates that it has administrative, legislative, or judicial functions as a subheading under the name of the government.

Enter the body directly under the name of the government, unless the name of an intermediate body is required to properly identify the body.

Examples

Pakistan. Ministry of Information and Broadcasting

Colombia. Departamento Nacional de Planeación

United States. Energy Information Administration

Tanzania. Bureau of Statistics

Sénégal. Ministère du Plan et de la Coopération

- 9.3** **Name of a government**

The name of a government is the name of the territory it governs. This may be a country, province, or state, or a city.

Use the short form of the name of the government.

Examples

Australia (not Commonwealth of Australia)

Côte d'Ivoire (not République de Côte d'Ivoire)

- 9.4** **Language of the name of the government**

Be consistent in the use of a language for the name of the government, by selecting one of the following two options:

Option 1: stand-alone system, unilingual system, or multilingual system with no centralized database

Enter the name of the government in the language of the system, or enter it consistently in one of the languages of the system.

Examples

If the language of the system is English:

Spain

Germany

Sweden

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

If the language of the system is French:

Espagne
Allemagne
Suède

If the languages of the system are Portuguese and Spanish, and Spanish is chosen as the language in which names of governments are entered consistently:

España
Alemania
Suecia

Option 2: multilingual system with a centralized database

- a) Enter the name of the government in the language of the government.

Examples

España
Deutschland
Sverige

- b) If the government has more than one official language, select the language version that corresponds to the official language in which the government body is cited on the item.

Example

Switzerland has three official language forms of its name — Schweiz, Suisse, and Svizzera.

Select the German form of the name when the item is in German, the French form when the item is in French, and the Italian form when the item is in Italian, as in the following example:

Schweiz. Politisches Departement
Suisse. Département Politique
Svizzera. Dipartimento Politico

- c) A complete list of names of governments in the language of the government can be found in **Annex 9, Names of governments in the language of the government**.

9.5 Governments below the national level

For governments below the national level (i.e. state, provincial, and city governments), add an appropriate distinguishing term in parentheses after the name of the government.

Examples

Québec (Province)
Québec (Ville)

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

New York (State)

New York (City)

Bahia (Estado)

9.6 Government bodies entered as a subheading under the name of the government

The following types of government body are entered as a subheading under the name of the government.

- a) Government ministries and departments, branches, sections, units, offices, etc. of government ministries.

Examples

United States. Office of Technology Assessment

Liberia. Ministry of Planning and Economic Affairs

Mauritanie. Direction de la Statistique

- b) Government commissions and committees

Example

Canada. Metric Commission

- c) Legislative bodies

Example

United Kingdom. Parliament

- d) Embassies and consulates

Examples

France. Ambassade (London)

Sri Lanka. High Commission (Canada)

- e) Delegations to international organizations

Example

Uruguay. Delegación en las Naciones Unidas

- f) Chiefs of state and heads of government

Examples

France. Premier Ministre

United States. President

ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

g) Courts

Example

United Kingdom. Crown Court (Manchester)

h) Armed services

Example

United States. Army Map Service

10 Place and Country Code

- 10.1** Add, after the name of the body, the place (town or city) where the body is located.

Exception Do not add the place after the names of government bodies entered as subheadings under the name of the government.

- 10.2** Follow the guidelines in **Annex 5** for entering place names.

- 10.3** Always add the ISO two-letter country code corresponding to the country where the body is located (see **Annex 10**).

Examples

FAO, Rome IT

WHO. Regional Office for the Western Pacific, Manila PH

Biblioteca Nacional de Agricultura, Brasília BR

Carleton University, Ottawa, ON CA

Institut du Sahel, Bamako ML

But

Canada. Department of the Environment CA

Ethiopia. Ministry of Rural Development ET

Uttar Pradesh (State). Department of Social Welfare IN

- 10.4** In the bibliographic record, the place will be entered in **subfield c** and the country code in **subfield d** of the appropriate field. In the computerized corporate name authority records suggested at the beginning of this annex, the place is entered in **subfield c** and the country code in **subfield d** of **field 901**.

Examples

^aFAO^cRome^dIT

^aCanada. Department of the Environment^dCA

11 Capitalization and Punctuation

- 11.1 Capitalize each significant word in the name of the body. (Although rules for capitalization vary in different languages, this rule has been adopted for consistency and convenience.)
- 11.2 Do not enter a period at the end of any of the fields.
- 11.3 Do not enter the hyphen in hyphenated words unless the two parts of the word can stand alone as separate words.

Examples

Enter: Co-operation as Cooperation
Inter-regional as Interregional
Sub-Saharan as SubSaharan

But retain the hyphen in:

Round-table
East-West

Note The examples in this annex are taken from the English edition of the *Macrothesaurus for information processing in the field of economic and social development*.³¹

I SUBJECT INDEXING

The primary aim of subject indexing is to allow the user seeking information on a particular subject to retrieve all of the relevant items in the collection. In a computerized system, subject retrieval is carried out by searching the database for the relevant subject indexing terms.

1 The Thesaurus

In most computerized information systems, indexing terms are selected from a thesaurus. In a thesaurus, the indexing terms (called “descriptors”) are presented in such a way as to show their relationship to each other.

For example, the *Macrothesaurus* contains the following sections:

- a main, alphabetically arranged section giving full information about each descriptor,
- a section entitled “Descriptor groups”, arranged by facet number,
- a hierarchical display, and
- a KWOC (Key Word Out of Context) index.

Here is an example of an entry in the main alphabetical section of the *Macrothesaurus*:

INDUSTRIAL CROPS
CULTURES INDUSTRIELLES / CULTIVOS INDUSTRIALES - 07.07.02
Refers to crops grown on a large scale and processed with mechanical equipment.
UF: CASH CROPS
TT: CROPS
BT: CROPS
NT: COCOA
COCONUTS
COFFEE
COTTON
FLAX
HEVEAS
OIL CROPS
OPIUM
SUGAR BEETS
SUGAR CANE
TEA
TOBACCO
RT: AGROINDUSTRY

The French and Spanish equivalents of the descriptor are given, followed by the facet number, indicating the broad subject group to which the descriptor belongs. The next part of the entry is the scope note, explaining how the descriptor is to be used.

³¹ *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*. 4th ed. Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1991.

ANNEX 3: GUIDE TO SUBJECT INDEXING AND RETRIEVAL

The initials UF (Used For) indicate that a “Use” reference (equivalent to a “See” reference) has been made from this term:

CASH CROPS
USE: INDUSTRIAL CROPS

The initials TT (Top Term), BT (Broader Term), NT (Narrower Term), and RT (Related Term) indicate the place of the descriptor within a hierarchy.

Top Term means the most general term in the hierarchy. For example, in the hierarchy:

ANIMALS
DOMESTIC ANIMALS
DOGS

the Top Term is ANIMALS.

Broader Term means a term that is more general than the descriptor. For example, DOMESTIC ANIMALS is the Broader Term of DOGS.

Narrower Term means a term that is more specific than the descriptor. For example, DOGS is a Narrower Term of DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Related Term means a term that is neither more general nor more specific than the descriptor, but that is related to it. For example, INDUSTRIAL CROPS and AGROINDUSTRY are related to each other, but they are not in the same hierarchical line.

2 Determining the Subject Matter of the Item

- 2.1 To determine the subject matter of the item read the title page, preface, introduction, contents list, opening paragraphs, and conclusion.
- 2.2 Do not rely solely on a summary appearing on the item itself.
- 2.3 Do not read the whole document unless it is not otherwise possible to determine the subject (e.g., if there is no contents list, introduction, etc., or if the subject matter is difficult to understand).
- 2.4 As you scan the item, make a list of the concepts covered, including countries and regions, and international systems and organizations.

Make a note of the concepts that are the primary subject of the item. These will be entered in the primary descriptor field.

Do not list concepts that are mentioned only briefly and for which little substantial information is given. Put yourself in the place of the user and ask yourself whether, if you were looking for information on this subject, you would find this particular item relevant.

3 Selecting Descriptors

The next step is to translate the concepts in the list into the appropriate descriptors.

First, however, become familiar with the arrangement of the thesaurus by reading the introduction and perusing each section.

- 3.1** For each concept, consult the alphabetical display to find the most appropriate descriptor. Determine whether it is appropriate by perusing the scope note, the descriptor group to which it belongs, and the UF, BT, NT, and RT terms.

Examples

1. The item treats the subject “on-the-job training”. In the alphabetical display of descriptors, the following entry is found:

```
ON-THE-JOB TRAINING
  USE: IN-SERVICE TRAINING
```

Under the descriptor IN-SERVICE TRAINING, the following scope note is found:

Training given during active, paid work-periods.

This corresponds to the subject of the item, so the descriptor IN-SERVICE TRAINING is selected.

2. The item is a list of codes for the representation of names of languages. In the alphabetical display of descriptors, the following entry is found:

```
CODES
CODES/CODIGOS - 04.01.01
  NT:   BUILDING CODES
        LABOUR CODE
  RT:   REGULATIONS
```

The descriptor CODES is obviously not used in the same sense as in the document. Therefore, this descriptor is NOT selected. (Instead, the more general descriptor TERMINOLOGY is chosen.)

- 3.2** Select the most specific descriptor that expresses the concept.

Example

The concept “natural fibres” has been listed. Under the descriptor NATURAL FIBRES, the following Narrower Terms are listed:

```
ANIMAL FIBRES
PLANT FIBRES
```

The item deals only with plant fibres. Therefore, the descriptor PLANT FIBRES is selected.

- 3.3** However, if the item deals broadly with an array of subjects, choose a general descriptor rather than several specific ones.

Example

The item discusses energy resources in general, mentioning each kind of energy resource — electric, gas, nuclear, biomass, solar, wind, water, etc. The descriptor ENERGY RESOURCES is selected.

- 3.4 If you do not find a suitable descriptor in the alphabetical display, turn to the other sections of the thesaurus.

Examples

1. The concept “job sharing” does not appear in the alphabetical listing. However, under the heading SHARING in the KWOC index, the descriptor WORK SHARING is found. In the alphabetical section, the scope note under WORK SHARING indicates that it has the same meaning as job sharing. The descriptor WORK SHARING is therefore selected.
2. The concept “shanty town” does not appear in the alphabetical listing. Under the subject category for urban areas — 14.04.03 — the descriptor SLUMS is found. The descriptor SLUMS is checked in the alphabetical listing and is selected.

- 3.5 If you do not find a descriptor that expresses the concept precisely, either use a broader descriptor, or combine several descriptors.

Examples

1. The subject of the item is “handpumps”. There is no descriptor for this concept, so the more general descriptor PUMPS is selected.
2. The concept “microcomputer software” has been listed. In the alphabetical section of the thesaurus, the descriptor MICROCOMPUTERS is found, and a USE reference from “software” to COMPUTER PROGRAMMES. Two descriptors are therefore chosen to express this concept: MICROCOMPUTERS and COMPUTER PROGRAMMES.

- 3.6 As you become more familiar with the thesaurus, the appropriate descriptors will come to mind as you scan the item and note down the concepts. However, always check the descriptors in the thesaurus to be sure they are valid and that they are properly spelled. If you do not enter a descriptor accurately, it will not be found in a search. Printing an alphabetical list of the descriptors used in the database from time to time will help reveal any errors that may have occurred.
- 3.7 If it is the policy of the information system to do so, select local descriptors from the authority list maintained by the system. Local descriptors will probably include names of national institutions and names of geographic entities that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of persons, states, provinces, towns, lakes, and rivers.
- 3.8 If you encounter a new technology or concept in the item, consider proposing it as a new descriptor to the agency that manages the thesaurus. Follow the guidelines of the thesaurus management agency for proposing a new descriptor.

4 Entering the Descriptors in the Bibliographic Record

To facilitate the production of printed subject and geographic indexes, this manual provides three fields for descriptors selected from the thesaurus: Primary descriptors (300), Geographic descriptors (302), and Secondary descriptors (301)

4.1 Primary descriptors (300)

A maximum of six descriptors that describe the main subjects of the item is entered in this field. These descriptors are used to create a printed subject index. For this reason, descriptors that are not meaningful as entries in an index, i.e., terms that are only meaningful when combined with other descriptors in an on-line search are not entered in this field.

The following descriptors are examples of those that should be **excluded** from **field 300**:

- administrative aspects
- financial aspects
- mission reports
- conference papers

Also excluded from this field are geographic descriptors. These are entered in **field 302**.

Descriptors indicating the form of the item, such as dictionaries, manuals, directories, thesauri, and bibliographies, should only be entered in **field 300** if the individual documentation centre judges them to be useful entries in a printed index.

4.2 Geographic descriptors (302)

In this field, names of countries and regions selected from the thesaurus are entered.

The following descriptors are examples of those entered in **field 302**:

Africa	Oceania
Arab Gulf States	Sahara
Cuba	Sahel
Eastern Europe	South America
Ethiopia	South East Asia

Descriptors such as the following should **not** be entered in **field 302**, but in **fields 300** or **301**:

Arab countries	equatorial zone
arid zone	French-speaking Africa
ASEAN countries	Indian Ocean
Atlantic Ocean	landlocked countries
capitalist countries	least developed countries
colonial countries	OECD countries
developed countries	Pacific Ocean
developing countries	socialist countries
English-speaking Africa	tropical zone

Option

Depending on the needs of its users, a particular information system may decide to enter some of the descriptors from the above list in **field 302**.

4.3 Secondary descriptors (301)

The remainder of the subject descriptors selected from the thesaurus are entered in **field 301**.

Example

The item is the proceedings of a seminar on wood-based energy in Tanzania.

300	<FUELWOOD><ENERGY POLICY>
301	<BIOMASS><ENERGY CONSUMPTION><CONFERENCE REPORT><LIST OF PARTICIPANTS>
302	<TANZANIA>

The item will appear in a subject index under the headings FUELWOOD and ENERGY POLICY.

It will appear in a geographic index under the heading TANZANIA.

It can be retrieved in an on-line search using any of the descriptors in the three fields.

4.4 Optional descriptor fields

Two **optional** fields have been provided for descriptors that are not in the thesaurus.

- **Field 303** — Local descriptors is reserved for terms that an individual documentation centre might require, that do not fall within the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of persons or names of cities.
- **Field 304** — Proposed descriptors is used for descriptors that the documentation centre wishes to propose for inclusion in the thesaurus.

Descriptors in these fields would be available for searching but would not normally be included in printed subject indexes. However, individual documentation centres may decide to include them in printed subject indexes if they wish.

II SUBJECT RETRIEVAL

Once the descriptors are entered in the record, a fast-access path to each descriptor is created, i.e., each descriptor is automatically placed in an inverted file in the computer memory together with information indicating in which records and in which fields it is found.

Note In MICRO-ISIS, the maximum length of an entry in the inverted file is 30 characters. Any element longer than 30 characters will be truncated. For example, the descriptor NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORDER will appear in the inverted file as NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORD. You should be aware of this when carrying out a search.

It is also possible to retrieve information using free-text searching, i.e., by requesting the system to scan all the records in the database until the required information is found. This is much slower than inverted file searching and, therefore, elements that are often used for retrieval, such as the descriptors, title words, authors, and date, should be inverted.

1 Steps in Subject Retrieval

- 1.1 The first step in subject retrieval is the translation of the information needs of the user into descriptors selected from the thesaurus.

Example

The user has asked for information on the tourist industry in the West Indies. The thesaurus provides the following two USE references:

TOURIST INDUSTRY
USE: TOURISM

WEST INDIES
USE: CARIBBEAN

Under TOURISM are found the following related terms that would also be of interest to the user:

TOURISM DEVELOPMENT
TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE
TOURISM POLICY

Under CARIBBEAN, the 23 countries of the Caribbean are listed.

All of these descriptors will be used for the search.

- 1.2 The next step is to combine the descriptors using Boolean operators. These are:
- AND (A AND B means “retrieve all items indexed with Term A, but only if Term B is also present.”)
- OR (A OR B means “retrieve all items indexed with either Term A or Term B.”)
- NOT (A NOT B means “retrieve items indexed with Term A, but only if Term B is not present.”)

In MICRO-ISIS, the following symbols are used for the Boolean operators:

* AND + OR ^ NOT

MICRO-ISIS provides two ways of simplifying the combining of descriptors:

- the **right truncation** feature, which allows retrieval of all descriptors beginning with the same character string by entering the character string followed by a dollar sign. For example, to find all descriptors beginning with the string TOURISM, the search term TOURISM\$ is entered.
- the **any table** feature, which allows retrieval of all descriptors in a list, drawn up by the individual documentation centre according to its needs. For example, an “any table” for all of the Caribbean countries will save the documentalist from having to type in the names of the 23 countries of that region.

To carry out our search on tourism in the Caribbean, the following search formulation is entered:

TOURISM\$ * ANY CARIBBEAN

MICRO-ISIS provides two other features for refining the search:

- **proximity searching**, which allows terms to be retrieved only if they are next to each other or within a given number of words of each other. This is particularly useful when searching on title words.
- **field level searching**, which allows retrieval of a term only if it is found in a particular field. (Note that, in MICRO-ISIS, unless the field is specified, the term will be retrieved regardless of where it is in the record, as long as it has been inverted.)

Note In the application described in this manual, to retrieve a descriptor regardless of which descriptor field it is in, use the field identifier 301. To retrieve a descriptor only if it represents the main subject of the item, use the field identifier 300.

Examples

1. To find the phrase “greenhouse effect” (heating up of the Earth’s atmosphere) in the title, without retrieving items that treat greenhouses, the search strategy would be:

GREENHOUSE . EFFECT/(100)

That is, retrieve these two terms only if they are next to each other in **field 100** — Title.

2. Let us suppose that the search for information on tourism in the Caribbean produced too many items of marginal interest. To retrieve only those items in which tourism is one of the main subjects of the item, the search for the subject tourism may be restricted to **field 300** by entering:

TOURISM\$/(300) * ANY CARIBBEAN/(301)

More information about retrieval using MICRO-ISIS can be found in the *Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (version 2.3)*,³² part 2, section 7, The CDS/ISIS Search Language. Details concerning field level and proximity searching are described in paragraph B.2.c) of that section.

2 Multilingual Retrieval and Retrieval using Thesaurus Structure

A special program, written using the programing feature of MICRO-ISIS, will allow multilingual retrieval, and retrieval using the relations among the descriptors in the thesaurus.³³

2.1 Multilingual retrieval

When a multilingual thesaurus is used for indexing, the program will permit all items on a particular subject to be retrieved, regardless of the language used for indexing and regardless of the language used for searching.

³² This manual is used with version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS. A file called READ.ME on the MICRO-ISIS distribution diskette provides additional information unique to version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS.

³³ The program is available from the OECD, Paris.

Example

The languages of the system are English, French, and Spanish, and the items in the database have been indexed using any one of these languages. The descriptors are selected from a trilingual (English, French, and Spanish) thesaurus.

The users of the system can interrogate the database in any of the three languages and retrieve all relevant items, regardless of the language used for indexing.

2.2 Searching on broader, narrower, and related terms

The program will allow automatic searching on the broader, narrower, and related terms of a descriptor.

Example

The user is seeking information on cooperatives. Besides the descriptor COOPERATIVES, the user wishes to search on all of the narrower terms of this descriptor — AGRICULTURAL COOPERATIVES, CONSUMER COOPERATIVES, CREDIT COOPERATIVES, HOUSING COOPERATIVES, etc.

Instead of typing each of these descriptors, all items indexed with either cooperatives or any of its narrower terms can be retrieved.

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

A serial is a publication issued in successive parts, bearing numerical or chronological designations, and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, newsletters, annuals, and monographic series.

Examples

Scientific American
Canadian Psychiatric Association journal
Study abroad
Statistical yearbook — United Nations
AFRO technical papers
Global 1
SQB

To facilitate control over parts of serials entered in the bibliographic database (periodical articles and monographs published within monographic series), and to ensure consistency in the way serial titles are entered, a Serials Authority File (SAF) should be used.

The SAF contains the authoritative form of the serial title entered in **field 200** and of the monographic series title entered in **field 140**.

I FORM OF THE SAF

The form of the SAF will depend on the frequency with which particular serial titles appear in the bibliographic database, and the amount of available computer storage space.

For the sake of clarity, the examples in part II of this annex assume that the SAF is in the form of a card file.

1 SAF in the Form of a Card File

The SAF in the form of a card file contains a card for each title in its authoritative form (main card), and cards containing cross references from variant forms of the title.

Each main card contains:

- the form of the title to be used in **fields 140** or **200**,
- for monographic series, an example of the part statement to show its correct form,
- if available, the ISSN,
- cross references to earlier or later versions of the title, and to other language editions of the serial,
- the variant forms from which “see” references have been made (preceded by an X), and
- the date on which the card was created or updated.

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

Example 1: Monographic series

Main card

World Fertility Survey technical bulletins
no. 009
X WFS technical bulletins
1988-08-01

See reference

WFS technical bulletins
See: World Fertility Survey technical bulletins
1988-08-01

Example 2: Periodical

Main card

Library quarterly
ISSN 0024-2519
1983-10-02

Example 3: Periodical

Main card

Revista Latinoamericana de estudios educativos
ISSN 0185-1284
Former title: Revista del Centro de Estudios Educativos
1980-12-01

Main card

Revista del Centro de Estudios Educativos
Later title: Revista Latinoamericana de estudios
educativos
1980-12-01

2 Computerized SAF

In a system where a limited number of serial titles appear frequently in the bibliographic records, computerized serials authority records may be created in the bibliographic database to allow the entry of an authority code (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in **subfield z** of **field 140** and **field 200**, instead of the full serial title.

The advantages of computerized authority records are described in the **Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records**.

The set of fields relating to the SAF records will be the following:

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

Serials Authority Records

Tag	Field name	Repeat-able	Length	Inversion technique
911	Serial title		400	4
912	ISSN		9	
913	See reference(s)	R	400	4
914	See also other language edition(s)	R	400	
915	Former title(s)	R	400	
916	Later title(s)	R	400	
997	Authority record notes		200	
998	Authority record date		10	
999	Record type		1	0

Fields 913 to 916 contain the various kinds of cross references. Note that **field 914** is used only for other language editions that are published separately.

Field 997 contains information such as the source in which the title was verified and additional information about title changes.

Field 998 contains the date the record was created or last updated. The date is entered in the form YYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year-month-day, as in the examples below.

For serials authority records, **field 999** will always contain the code S.

Examples

MFN 38

911 Canadian woman studies
912 0706-8204
913 Cahiers de la femme
915 Canadian women's studies
997 Name changed with v. 3, no. 2, 1981
998 1987-04-01
999 S

MFN 35

911 WHO chronicle
912 0042-9694
914 Crónica de la OMS%Chronique OMS
998 1988-08-04
999 S

MFN 22

911 Crónica de la OMS
912 0250-8591
914 WHO chronicle%Chronique OMS
998 1988-08-04
999 S

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

MFN 26

911 Chronique OMS

912 0373-3556

914 WHO chronicle%Crónica de la OMS

998 1988-08-04

999 S

In the printout of the serials authority records used for consultation, the title in **field 911** will be interfiled with the "See" references in **field 913**.³⁴

Examples

Cahiers de la femme

SEE: Canadian woman studies (38)

Canadian woman studies (38)

ISSN: 0706-8204

FORMER TITLE: Canadian women's studies

Chronique OMS (26)

ISSN: 0373-3556

OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Crónica de la OMS

Crónica de la OMS (22)

ISSN: 0250-8591

OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Chronique OMS

WHO chronicle (35)

ISSN: 0042-9694

OTHER LANG: Crónica de la OMS
Chronique OMS

II RULES FOR ENTRIES IN THE SAF

Note 1 These rules apply to all the kinds of publications that are covered by the definition of a serial, including periodicals, yearbooks, newsletters, newspapers, and monographic series.

Note 2 These rules are based on the rules for key title in the *ISDS Manual*.³⁵

- 1 Choose the most prominent form of the title on the title page of the serial. If the serial lacks a title page, choose the form found, in order of preference, on the cover, on the masthead, in the introductory material, or elsewhere on the publication.
- 2 If the serial has parallel titles in two or more languages, choose only **one** language version. Choose, in order of preference:

³⁴ To create this kind of index in MICRO-ISIS, use the special program SERIAL on the accompanying diskette (output is Annex 19, example 15).

³⁵ International Serials Data System. *ISDS Manual*. Paris, ISDS International Centre, 1983.

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

- the title that is the most prominent typographically, then
- the title that appears first on the title page.

Make a “See” reference from the language form(s) not chosen.

Example

The serial bears the titles:

Canadian Woman Studies
Cahiers de la femme

The first title is chosen:

Canadian woman studies

The following “See” reference is made in the SAF:

Cahiers de la femme
See: Canadian woman studies

- 3 If the documentation centre receives more than one language edition of the serial, make an entry for each language edition in the SAF. Make appropriate cross references to the other language edition(s).

Example

The documentation centre receives *WHO chronicle* in both the English and Spanish editions. The following two entries are made in the SAF:

WHO chronicle
Other lang: Crónica de la OMS
Crónica de la OMS
Other lang: WHO chronicle

- 4 Capitalize the first word of the title, proper nouns, and each significant word in the names of corporate bodies that are part of the title.

Examples

Journal of peasant studies
Jeune Afrique
Revista de la CEPAL
Library Association record
Annual report – World Bank

- 5 If the serial title begins with an article (“A”, “An”, and “The” or their equivalents in other languages), drop the article unless this would change the meaning of the title.

Example

Enter *The library quarterly* as: Library quarterly

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

If the initial article is retained, enclose it between triangular brackets, and capitalize the next word in the title. (In MICRO-ISIS, the triangular brackets allow the initial article to be ignored during sorting. They do not appear in printed output destined for the user.)

Example

<The> State of the world's children

- 6 If the title of the serial is a generic word or phrase, not significant on its own, such as "bulletin" or "newsletter", add the name of the issuing body in the form:

Generic phrase - Issuing body

Enter the name of the issuing body as it appears on the title page of the serial.

Examples

Newsletter - ESCAP, Regional Centre for Technology Transfer

Boletín - Oficina Regional de Ciencia y Tecnología de la Unesco para América Latina y el Caribe

- 7 When the serial is a supplement to another serial and has its own distinctive title, enter the supplement under its own name.

Example

Industrial production is a supplement to the serial *Main economic indicators* and is therefore entered under its own name.

- 8 When the serial is a supplement to another serial, and does not have a distinctive title of its own, enter the title in the form:

Parent title. Supplement title

Examples

Solid state physics. Supplement

Canadian statistical review. Weekly supplement

- 9 When the serial is a section or subseries of a parent serial, enter the title in the form:

Parent title. Section or subseries number and title

Examples

Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series A

Bulletin signalétique - Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique. 359, Maladies du sang

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

- 10** Make a “See” reference in the SAF from variant forms of the title to the established form of the title. “See” references are also made from other language versions of the title when the serial has parallel titles in two or more languages (see rule 2 above).

Examples

Social questions bulletin

See: SQB

Bach Society bulletin

See: Bulletin - Bach Society

WFS technical bulletins

See: World Fertility Survey technical bulletins

Documents de l'Union - IUSSP

See: IUSSP papers

ANNEX 5: GUIDELINES FOR ENTERING PLACE NAMES

These guidelines apply to place names entered in the following fields:

- 111** Corporate author(s)
- 112** Affiliation
- 113** Other associated institution(s)
- 114** Meeting(s)
- 121** Publisher
- 211** Corporate author(s) — parent

The place entered in these fields is usually a city or town, but may be a suburb, or, as in the case of Singapore and Bali, an island.

The standardization of place names entered in these fields is desirable to facilitate information retrieval and to allow the creation of indexes sorted by place name. For example, users often can not recall precisely the name of a meeting but they do know the place where the meeting was held.

1 Language

Two options have been provided for the language in which the place name should be entered — one for unilingual systems and one for multilingual systems.

1.1 Option 1: unilingual systems

Enter the place name in the language of the system.

Examples

If the language of the system is English:

Geneva
Rome
Vienna
London

If the language of the system is French:

Genève
Rome
Vienne
Londres

1.2 Option 2: multilingual systems

Enter the place name in the official language of the place. Use reference books to determine the form of the name in its own language. The *Europa yearbook* gives the official languages of countries and the *Times atlas* gives the official names of cities.³⁶

³⁶ For full bibliographic details, see **Annex 16 — Bibliography**.

Examples

Genève
Roma
Wien
München
Praha

If the place itself has more than one official language, choose the official language version corresponding to the language, or one of the languages, of the system. If this does not apply, choose the official language version most likely to be known by the users of the system.

2 Addition of State or Province Names and Other Qualifiers

- 2.1** Add the name of the state, province, or district after the place name if it is customary to do so. For Australia, Canada, and the United States, see **Annex 11 — Abbreviations of state and province names**.

Examples

Brisbane, Qld
Ann Arbor, MI
Burnaby, BC
Washington, DC
México, DF

- 2.2** If the place is a suburb, follow the suburb name with the name of the city of which it is part.

Examples

Legon, Accra
Diliman, Quezon City
Ryde, Sydney, NSW

ANNEX 6: GUIDE TO MANAGING ACQUISITIONS FIELDS

Documentation centres with a computerized bibliographic information system can use the bibliographic database to manage the processing of acquisitions. A record is created in the bibliographic database for each item at the time of ordering. Once the item is received, the same record is updated with cataloguing information.

The advantages of managing acquisitions in this way are:

- the information needs to be recorded only once, thus saving time and effort and reducing the risk of error,
- items on order can be retrieved in an on-line search under any data element (author, title, publisher, supplier, etc.) thus providing more access points than in a manual file,
- because of improved access to the information about the order, the risk of accidental ordering of duplicates is greatly reduced, and
- the computer record can be used for printing purchase orders and reminders.

Here is an example of a cycle through which an item and its record will pass:

1. The item is selected, let us say, from an announcement of new publications found in the newsletter of an institution.
2. A record is created in the bibliographic database with as much of the bibliographic information about the item as is available, together with the following elements of information:
 - how the item will be received: free, on exchange, or by payment (**field 500**),
 - the date of ordering (**field 510**),
 - the number of copies ordered (**field 513**),
 - the name of the person who requested or selected the item (**field 514**),
 - its price, if it is to be paid for (**field 516**),
 - the name of the supplier (**field 515**),
 - a processing status code showing that the item is on order and not yet received (**field 400**), and
 - the source of information for the request (in this case the name and issue number of the newsletter that announced the item). This is entered in the field provided for acquisitions notes (**field 517**).
3. The actual order or request letter is then prepared, either manually or by printing the computer record using a specially designed display format. A program to print purchase orders has been included on the diskette (see **Annex 19: Section VI — Report generation**).
4. At regular intervals, a search is made on the database to find items that have been on order for an unexpectedly long time. This is done by searching on the status code in **field 400** and the date of ordering in **field 510**. Claims for these items are then either prepared manually or computer printed. The date on which the claim was made is entered in **field 511 — Date claimed**.
5. Any information sent by the supplier in relation to an order or a claim is entered in **field 517 — Acquisition notes**.

ANNEX 6: GUIDE TO MANAGING ACQUISITIONS FIELDS

6. When the item arrives, the status code in **field 400** is changed to show that the item has been received but has not yet been catalogued. The date of receipt is entered in **field 512**, and the price in **field 516** is adjusted to reflect the actual price, if necessary.
7. The item is then fully catalogued by updating the same record, and the status code in **field 400** is changed to reflect this.

Computerized supplier authority records

In the description of the supplier field (**515**), option 3 has been provided to allow the use of computerized supplier authority records.

In a system where purchase orders are computer-printed, and where most orders are addressed to a limited number of suppliers, the use of computerized supplier authority records saves both time and computer storage space by allowing a supplier code to be entered in the supplier field instead of the full name and address of the supplier.

In MICRO-ISIS, the supplier records must be in the same database as the bibliographic records. In this manual, it is suggested that the authority code be a four-letter mnemonic code representing the name of the supplier. Each supplier record includes a field for the authority code and a field for the supplier's name and address.

In the bibliographic record, the four-letter supplier code is entered in **subfield z** of **field 515**. Whenever the record is used to print a purchase order, the full name and address from the authority record is printed in place of **field 515**.

In MICRO-ISIS, the link between **field 515** and the supplier authority record is made through the L and REF functions in the CDS/ISIS formatting language. (For a description of these functions, see the *Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (version 2.3)*, part 2, section 4, The formatting language, paragraph F.4, functions.)

Here is a list of fields required in the supplier authority records:

Supplier Authority Records

Tag	Field name	Subfields	Length	Inversion technique
921	Supplier authority code		4	0
922	Supplier name and address	^a Supplier name ^b Address — line 1 ^c Address — line 2 ^d Address — line 3 ^e Country	200	^a 4
997	Authority record notes		200	
998	Authority record date		10	
999	Record type		1	0

To create a unique entry in the inverted file for each supplier code, **field 921** is inverted with a prefix. In the implementation on the accompanying diskette, the prefix "ZZX-" has been used.

ANNEX 6: GUIDE TO MANAGING ACQUISITIONS FIELDS

Inversion of the supplier name in **field 922** is optional.

Field 997 contains information such as the kind of material the supplier handles.

The date in **field 998** is the date the record was created or the most recent date on which the information in the record was updated. It is entered in the form YYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year-month-day, as in the example below.

For supplier authority records, **field 999** will always contain the code X. This field will be inverted.

Example of a supplier authority record

921	UNIB
922	^aUniversity Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited^bUniversity of Ibadan^cIbadan^eNigeria
997	Agency for FAO publications
998	1985-12-01
999	X

When **field 922** is printed on a computer-produced purchase order, each subfield appears on a new line.

Example

```
University Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited
University of Ibadan
Ibadan
Nigeria
```

ANNEX 7: ABBREVIATIONS FOR NAMES OF MONTHS

ENGLISH	FRENCH	SPANISH
Jan	jan	enero
Feb	fév	feb
Mar	mar	mar
Apr	avr	abr
May	mai	mayo
Jun	jun	jun
Jul	jul	jul
Aug	août	ago
Sep	sep	set
Oct	oct	oct
Nov	nov	nov
Dec	déc	dic

ANNEX 8: LANGUAGE CODES

The language codes in this annex have been selected from table 1 — Alphabetical list of two-letter language symbols in *Code for the Representation of Names of Languages* (International Organization for Standardization: Geneva. 1988. ISO 639-1988),

Afrikaans	Af	Laotian	Lo
Albanian	Sq	Latin	La
Amharic	Am	Latvian	Lv
Arabic	Ar	Lithuanian	Lt
Armenian	Hy	Malagasy	Mg
Assamese	As	Malay	Ms
Azerbaijani	Az	Maltese	Mt
Bengali	Bn	Nepali	Ne
Bhutani	Dz	Norwegian	No
Bulgarian	Bg	Persian	Fa
Burmese	My	Polish	Pl
Byelorussian	Be	Portuguese	Pt
Cambodian	Km	Punjabi	Pa
Chinese	Zh	Romanian	Ro
Croatian	Hr	Russian	Ru
Czech	Cs	Sanskrit	Sa
Danish	Da	Serbian	Sr
Dutch	Nl	Serbo-Croatian	Sh
English	En	Sindhi	Sd
Estonian	Et	Singhalese	Si
Finnish	Fi	Slovak	Sk
French	Fr	Slovenian	Sl
German	De	Somali	So
Greek	El	Spanish	Es
Gujarati	Gu	Sudanese	Su
Hausa	Ha	Swahili	Sw
Hebrew	Iw	Swedish	Sv
Hindi	Hi	Tagalog	Tl
Hungarian	Hu	Tamil	Ta
Icelandic	Is	Thai	Th
Indonesian	In	Tibetan	Bo
Italian	It	Turkish	Tr
Japanese	Ja	Ukrainian	Uk
Korean	Ko	Urdu	Ur
Kurdish	Ku	Uzbek	Uz
		Vietnamese	Vi

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Sources

International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Names of States: an Authority List of Language Forms for Catalogue Entries*. London, IFLA, 1981.

United Nations. Department of Conference Services. Documentation, Reference and Terminology Section. *Names of Countries and Adjectives of Nationality*. New York, UN, 1985. (Terminology Bulletin no. 333) (ST/CS/SER.F/333) (and amendments to date).

ISO 3166 Newsletter (used for name changes occurring after the publication of *Names of States*).

Note This list has been drawn up according to the following formula:

- a) Apart from the exceptions in b and c below, the names correspond to the short form of the “original” name provided in IFLA’s *Names of States*.
- b) When the “original” form of the name is in a non-Roman script, a translation of the name into the Roman-script language best known in the country has been chosen, rather than a transliteration of the original form. For example, for Algeria, the French form of the name — Algérie — has been used, rather than the transliteration of the original — Djazaïria.
- c) When the short form of the “original” name, or its translation, is in one of the official Roman-script languages of the United Nations (English, French, and Spanish), and when this form differs from the form “to be used for all ordinary purposes in the United Nations” provided in the UN’s *Names of Countries and Adjectives of Nationality*, the United Nations form has been chosen. For example, for Libya, the United Nations form — Libyan Arab Jamahiriya — has been chosen.

The list is arranged by ISO two-letter country code (see **Annex 10**).

Code	Name of government	Notes
AD	Andorra	
AE	United Arab Emirates	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Imārāt
AF	Afghanistan	
AG	Antigua and Barbuda	Official UN form
AI	Anguilla	
AL	Shqipëri	(Albania)
AM	Armenia	
AN	Nederlandse Antillen	
AO	Angola	
AQ	Antarctica	
AR	Argentina	
AS	American Samoa	
AT	Österreich	
AU	Australia	
AW	Aruba	
AZ	Azerbaijan	
BA	Bosna i Hercegovina	
BB	Barbados	

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
BD	Bangladesh	
BE	Belgique België	Two official languages
BF	Burkina Faso	
BG	Bulgaria	English version. Transliteration of the original: Bălgarija
BH	Bahrain	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Bahrain
BI	Burundi	
BJ	Bénin	
BM	Bermuda	
BN	Brunei Darussalam	
BO	Bolivia	
BR	Brasil	
BS	Bahamas	
BT	Bhutan	English version. Transliteration of the original: Druk-Ÿul; Bhutān
BW	Botswana	
BY	Belarus	
BZ	Belize	
CA	Canada	
CC	Cocos (Keeling) Islands	
CF	République Centrafricaine	Official UN form
CG	Congo	
CH	Schweiz Suisse Svizzera	Three official languages
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	
CK	Cook Islands	
CL	Chile	
CM	Cameroon Cameroun	Two official languages
CN	China	English version. Transliteration of the original: Zhongguo
CO	Colombia	
CR	Costa Rica	
CU	Cuba	
CV	Cabo Verde	
CX	Christmas Island	
CY	Cyprus	English version. Transliteration of the original: Kypros; Kibris
CZ	Česká Republika	
DE	Deutschland	
DJ	Djibouti	
DK	Danmark	
DM	Dominica	
DO	República Dominicana	
DZ	Algérie	French version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Djazaïria

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
EC	Ecuador	
EE	Eesti	
EG	Egypt	English version. Transliteration of the original: Miṣr
EH	Sahara Occidental	
ER	Eritrea	English version. Transliteration of the original: Ērtra
ES	España	
ET	Ethiopia	English version. Transliteration of the original: Ityopya
FI	Suomi Finland	Two official languages
FJ	Fiji	
FK	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	
FM	Micronesia, Federated States of	
FO	Faerøerne	(Faroe Islands)
FR	France	
GA	Gabon	
GB	United Kingdom	
GD	Grenada	
GE	Georgia	
GF	Guyane Française	
GH	Ghana	
GI	Gibraltar	
GL	Grønland	
GM	Gambia	Official UN form
GN	Guinée	
GP	Guadeloupe	
GQ	Guinea Ecuatorial	
GR	Greece	English version. Transliteration of the original: Hellas
GS	South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	
GT	Guatemala	
GU	Guam	
GW	Guiné-Bissau	
GY	Guyana	
HK	Hong Kong	English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Xianggang
HN	Honduras	
HR	Hrvatska	(Croatia)
HT	Haïti	
HU	Magyarország	(Hungary)
ID	Indonesia	
IE	Ireland Éire	Two official languages
IL	Israel	
IN	India	English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Bhārat

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
IQ	Iraq	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-'Irāq
IR	Iran, Islamic Republic of	Official UN form
IS	Ísland	
IT	Italia	
JM	Jamaica	
JO	Jordan	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Urdun
JP	Japan	English version. Transliteration of the original: Nippon
KE	Kenya	
KG	Kyrgyzstan	
KH	Cambodge	
KI	Kiribati	
KM	Comores	
KN	Saint Kitts and Nevis	Official UN form
KP	Korea, Democratic People's Republic of	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Chosun minshu-chui inmin konghwa-guk
KR	Korea, Republic of	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Han Kook
KW	Kuwait	
KY	Cayman Islands	
KZ	Kazakhstan	
LA	Lao People's Democratic Republic	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Pathet Lao
LB	Liban	French version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Lubnān
LC	Saint Lucia	Official UN form
LI	Liechtenstein	
LK	Sri Lanka	
LR	Liberia	
LS	Lesotho	
LT	Lietuva	
LU	Luxembourg	
LV	Latvija	
LY	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Al- Jamahiriyah Al-Arabiya Al-Libya Al- Shabiya Al-Ishtirākiya
MA	Maroc	French version. Transliteration of the original: Morocco
MC	Monaco	
MD	Moldova, Republic of	
MG	Madagascar Madagascar Repoblika Demokratika Malagasy Madagasikara	Three official languages. Official UN form (French): Madagascar
MH	Marshall Islands	

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
ML	Mali	
MM	Myanmar	
MN	Mongolia	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Būgd Nayramdakh Mongol Ard Uls
MO	Macau	English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Ao-mén
MP	Northern Mariana Islands	
MQ	Martinique	
MR	Mauritanie	French version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Mūritanīā
MS	Montserrat	
MT	Malta	
MU	Mauritius	
MV	Maldives	
MW	Malawi	
MX	México	
MY	Malaysia	
MZ	Moçambique	
NA	Namibia	
NC	Nouvelle-Calédonie	
NE	Niger	
NF	Norfolk Island	
NG	Nigeria	
NI	Nicaragua	
NL	Nederland	
NO	Norge	
NP	Nepal	
NR	Nauru	
NU	Niue	
NZ	New Zealand	
OM	Oman	
PA	Panamá	
PE	Perú	
PF	Polynésie Française	
PG	Papua New Guinea	
PH	Filipinas Republika ñg Pilipinas	Two official languages. Official UN form (Spanish): Filipinas
PK	Pakistan	
PL	Polska	
PM	Saint-Pierre-et-Miquelon	
PN	Pitcairn	
PR	Puerto Rico	
PT	Portugal	
PW	Palau	
PY	Paraguay	
QA	Qatar	
RE	Réunion	
RO	România	

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
RU	Russian Federation	
RW	Rwanda	
SA	Saudi Arabia	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Sa'udiya
SB	Solomon Islands	
SC	Seychelles	
SD	Sudan	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Sūdān
SE	Sverige	
SG	Singapore Singapura	Two official languages
SH	Saint Helena	
SI	Slovenija	
SK	Slovensko	
SL	Sierra Leone	
SM	San Marino	
SN	Sénégal	
SO	Somalia	English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Súmāl
SR	Suriname	
ST	São Tomé e Príncipe	
SV	El Salvador	
SY	Syrian Arab Republic	English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: al- Jamhuriya al Arabia as-Souriya
SZ	Swaziland	
TC	Turks and Caicos Islands	
TD	Tchad	
TF	Terres Australes Françaises	
TG	Togo	
TH	Thailand	English version. Transliteration of the original: Muang-Thai
TJ	Tajikistan	
TK	Tokelau	
TM	Turkmenistan	
TN	Tunisie	French version. Transliteration of the original: Tūnis
TO	Tonga	
TP	East Timor	
TR	Türkiye	
TT	Trinidad and Tobago	
TV	Tuvalu	
TW	Taiwan	
TZ	Tanzania, United Republic of	Official UN form
UA	Ukraine	
UG	Uganda	
UM	United States Minor Outlying Islands	
US	United States	
UY	Uruguay	

ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Code	Name of government	Notes
UZ	Uzbekistan	
VA	Vaticano	
VC	Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	Official UN form
VE	Venezuela	
VG	Virgin Islands (British)	
VI	Virgin Islands (US)	
VN	Viet Nam	French version (official UN form)
VU	Vanuatu	
WF	Îles Wallis et Futuna	
WS	Samoa	Official UN form
YE	Yemen	
YT	Mayotte	
YU	Jugoslavija	
ZA	Suid-Afrika South Africa	Two official languages
ZM	Zambia	
ZR	Zaire	
ZW	Zimbabwe	

ANNEX 10: ISO TWO-LETTER COUNTRY CODES

Sources

International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries*. 4th ed. Geneva, ISO, 1993 (ISO 3166)

ISO 3166 Newsletter. Berlin, ISO 3166 Maintenance Agency Secretariat. Irregular.

The list is arranged in alphabetical order of the English name of the country.

Country	Code	Country	Code
Afghanistan	AF	Cape Verde	CV
Albania	AL	Cayman Islands	KY
Algeria	DZ	Central African Republic	CF
American Samoa	AS	Chad	TD
Andorra	AD	Chile	CL
Angola	AO	China	CN
Anguilla	AI	Christmas Island	CX
Antarctica	AQ	Cocos (Keeling) Islands	CC
Antigua and Barbuda	AG	Colombia	CO
Argentina	AR	Comoros	KM
Armenia	AM	Congo	CG
Aruba	AW	Cook Islands	CK
Australia	AU	Costa Rica	CR
Austria	AT	Côte d'Ivoire	CI
Azerbaijan	AZ	Croatia	HR
		Cuba	CU
Bahamas	BS	Cyprus	CY
Bahrain	BH	Czech Republic	CZ
Bangladesh	BD		
Barbados	BB	Denmark	DK
Belarus	BY	Djibouti	DJ
Belgium	BE	Dominica	DM
Belize	BZ	Dominican Republic	DO
Benin	BJ		
Bermuda	BM	East Timor	TP
Bhutan	BT	Ecuador	EC
Bolivia	BO	Egypt	EG
Bosnia and Herzegovina	BA	El Salvador	SV
Botswana	BW	Equatorial Guinea	GQ
Bouvet Island	BV	Eritrea	ER
Brazil	BR	Estonia	EE
British Indian Ocean Territory	IO	Ethiopia	ET
Brunei Darussalam	BN		
Bulgaria	BG	Falkland Islands (Malvinas)	FK
Burkina Faso	BF	Faroe Islands	FO
Burundi	BI	Fiji	FJ
		Finland	FI
Cambodia	KH	France	FR
Cameroon	CM	French Guiana	GF
Canada	CA	French Polynesia	PF

ANNEX 10: ISO TWO-LETTER COUNTRY CODES

Country	Code	Country	Code
French Southern Territories	TF	Lesotho	LS
Gabon	GA	Liberia	LR
Gambia	GM	Libyan Arab Jamahiriya	LY
Georgia	GE	Liechtenstein	LI
Germany	DE	Lithuania	LT
Ghana	GH	Luxembourg	LU
Gibraltar	GI	Macau	MO
Greece	GR	Macedonia, Former Yugoslav Republic of	MK
Greenland	GL	Madagascar	MG
Grenada	GD	Malawi	MW
Guadeloupe	GP	Malaysia	MY
Guam	GU	Maldives	MV
Guatemala	GT	Mali	ML
Guinea	GN	Malta	MT
Guinea-Bissau	GW	Marshall Islands	MH
Guyana	GY	Martinique	MQ
Haiti	HT	Mauritania	MR
Heard and McDonald Islands	HM	Mauritius	MU
Honduras	HN	Mayotte	YT
Hong Kong	HK	Mexico	MX
Hungary	HU	Micronesia, Federated States of	FM
Iceland	IS	Moldova, Republic of	MD
India	IN	Monaco	MC
Indonesia	ID	Mongolia	MN
Iran, Islamic Republic of	IR	Montserrat	MS
Iraq	IQ	Morocco	MA
Ireland	IE	Mozambique	MZ
Israel	IL	Myanmar	MM
Italy	IT	Namibia	NA
Jamaica	JM	Nauru	NR
Japan	JP	Nepal	NP
Jordan	JO	Netherlands	NL
Kazakhstan	KZ	Netherlands Antilles	AN
Kenya	KE	New Caledonia	NC
Kiribati	KI	New Zealand	NZ
Korea, Democratic People's Republic of	KP	Nicaragua	NI
Korea, Republic of	KR	Niger	NE
Kuwait	KW	Nigeria	NG
Kyrgyzstan	KG	Niue	NU
Lao People's Democratic Republic	LA	Norfolk Island	NF
Latvia	LV	Northern Mariana Islands	MP
Lebanon	LB	Norway	NO
		Oman	OM
		Pakistan	PK

ANNEX 10: ISO TWO-LETTER COUNTRY CODES

Country	Code	Country	Code
Palau	PW	Taiwan, Province of China	TW
Palestine [<i>reserved code</i>]	PS	Tajikistan	TJ
Panama	PA	Tanzania, United Republic of	TZ
Papua New Guinea	PG	Thailand	TH
Paraguay	PY	Togo	TG
Peru	PE	Tokelau	TK
Philippines	PH	Tonga	TO
Pitcairn	PN	Trinidad and Tobago	TT
Poland	PL	Tunisia	TN
Portugal	PT	Turkey	TR
Puerto Rico	PR	Turkmenistan	TM
		Turks and Caicos Islands	TC
Qatar	QA	Tuvalu	TV
Réunion	RE	Uganda	UG
Romania	RO	Ukraine	UA
Russian Federation	RU	United Arab Emirates	AE
Rwanda	RW	United Kingdom	GB
		United States	US
Saint Helena	SH	United States Minor Outlying Islands	UM
Saint Kitts and Nevis	KN	Uruguay	UY
Saint Lucia	LC	Uzbekistan	UZ
Saint Pierre and Miquelon	PM		
Saint Vincent and the Grenadines	VC	Vanuatu	VU
Samoa	WS	Vatican City State (Holy See)	VA
San Marino	SM	Venezuela	VE
Sao Tome and Principe	ST	Viet Nam	VN
Saudi Arabia	SA	Virgin Islands (British)	VG
Senegal	SN	Virgin Islands (US)	VI
Seychelles	SC		
Sierra Leone	SL	Wallis and Futuna Islands	WF
Singapore	SG	Western Sahara	EH
Slovakia	SK		
Slovenia	SI	Yemen	YE
Solomon Islands	SB	Yugoslavia	YU
Somalia	SO		
South Africa	ZA	Zaire	ZR
South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands	GS	Zambia	ZM
Spain	ES	Zimbabwe	ZW
Sri Lanka	LK		
Sudan	SD		
Suriname	SR		
Svalbard and Jan Mayen Islands	SJ		
Swaziland	SZ		
Sweden	SE		
Switzerland	CH		
Syrian Arab Republic	SY		

ANNEX 11: ABBREVIATIONS OF STATE AND PROVINCE NAMES

Australia

Australian Capital Territory	ACT	South Australia	SA
New South Wales	NSW	Tasmania	Tas
Northern Territory	NT	Victoria	Vic
Queensland	Qld	Western Australia	WA

Canada

Alberta	AB	Nova Scotia	NS
British Columbia	BC	Ontario	ON
Manitoba	MB	Prince Edward Island	PE
New Brunswick	NB	Québec	PQ
Newfoundland	NF	Saskatchewan	SK
Northwest Territories	NT	Yukon Territory	YT

Source: Canada's official contribution to ISO 3166/Part 2 (forthcoming) *Codes for the Representation of Names of Subentities*

United States

Alabama	AL	Montana	MT
Alaska	AK	Nebraska	NE
Arizona	AZ	Nevada	NV
Arkansas	AR	New Hampshire	NH
California	CA	New Jersey	NJ
Colorado	CO	New Mexico	NM
Connecticut	CT	New York	NY
Delaware	DE	North Carolina	NC
District of Columbia	DC	North Dakota	ND
Florida	FL	Ohio	OH
Georgia	GA	Oklahoma	OK
Hawaii	HI	Oregon	OR
Idaho	ID	Pennsylvania	PA
Illinois	IL	Rhode Island	RI
Indiana	IN	South Carolina	SC
Iowa	IA	South Dakota	SD
Kansas	KS	Tennessee	TN
Kentucky	KY	Texas	TX
Louisiana	LA	Utah	UT
Maine	ME	Vermont	VT
Maryland	MD	Virginia	VA
Massachusetts	MA	Washington	WA
Michigan	MI	West Virginia	WV
Minnesota	MN	Wisconsin	WI
Mississippi	MS	Wyoming	WY
Missouri	MO		

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

ACNUR	Oficina del Alto Comisionado de las Naciones Unidas para los Refugiados Other lang: UNHCR, HCR
AIEA	Agence Internationale de l'Energie Atomique Other lang: IAEA, OIEA
AIF	Asociación Internacional de Fomento Other lang: IDA
ALADI	Asociación Latinoamericana de Integración Association Latinoaméricaine pour l'Intégration Other lang: LAIA Former name: ALALE, ALALC
ALALC	Asociación Latinoamericana de Libre Comercio Other lang: LAFTA, ALALE Later name: ALADI
ALALE	Association Latinoaméricaine de Libre Echange Other lang: LAFTA, ALALC Later name: ALADI
ASEAN	Association of South East Asian Nations
BIT	Bureau International du Travail Other lang: ILO, OIT
CARICOM	Caribbean Community Former name: CARIFTA
CARIFTA	Caribbean Free Trade Association Later name: CARICOM
CEA	Commission Economique pour l'Afrique Other lang: ECA, CEPA
CEAEO	Commission Economique pour l'Asie et l'Extrême-Orient Other lang: ECAFE, CEPALO Later name: CESAP
CEAO	Commission Economique pour l'Asie Occidentale Other lang: ECWA, CEPAO Later name: CESAO
CEE	Commission Economique pour l'Europe Other lang: ECE, CEPE
CEPA	Comisión Económica para Africa Other lang: ECA, CEA
CEPAL	Comisión Económica para América Latina y el Caribe Other lang: CEPALC, ECLAC
CEPALC	Commission Economique pour l'Amérique Latine et les Caraïbes Other lang: CEPAL, ECLAC

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

CEPALO	Comisión Económica para Asia y el Lejano Orient Other lang: CEAEO, ECAFE Later name: CESPAP
CEPAO	Comisión Económica para Asia Occidental Other lang: ECWA, CEAO Later name: CESPAP
CEPE	Comisión Económica para Europe Other lang: CEE, ECE
CESAO	Commission Economique et Sociale pour l'Asie Occidentale Other lang: ESCWA, CESPAP Former name: CEAO
CESAP	Commission Economique et Sociale pour l'Asie et le Pacifique Other lang: ESCAP, CESPAP Former name: CEAEO
CESPAO	Comisión Económica y Social para Asia Occidental Other lang: ESCWA, CESAO Former name: CEPAO
CESPAP	Comisión Económica y Social para Asia y el Pacifico Other lang: ESCAP, CESAP Former name: CEPALO
CFI	Corporación Financiera Internacional Other lang: IFC, SFI
CIJ	Cour Internationale de Justice Corte Internacional de Justicia Other lang: ICJ
CNUCED	Conférence des Nations Unies sur le Commerce et le Développement Other lang: UNCTAD
CNUDR	Centre des Nations Unies pour le Développement Régional Centro de las Naciones Unidas para el Desarrollo Regional Other lang: UNCRD
ECA	Economic Commission for Africa Other lang: CEA, CEPA
ECAFE	Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East Other lang: CEAEO, CEPALO Later name: ESCAP
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe Other lang: CEE, CEPE
ECLAC	Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean Other lang: CEPAL, CEPALC
ECWA	Economic Commission for Western Asia Other lang: CEAO, CEPAP Later name: ESCWA

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

ESCAP	Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific Other lang: CESAP, CESPAP Former name: ECAFE
ESCWA	Economic and Social Commission for Western Asia Other lang: CESAO, CESPAP Former name: ECWA
FAO	Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations Organisation des Nations Unies pour l'Alimentation et l'Agriculture Organización de las Naciones Unidas para la Agricultura y la Alimentación
FID	International Federation for Documentation Fédération Internationale de Documentation Federación Internacional de Documentación
FMI	Fonds Monétaire International Fondo Monetario Internacional Other lang: IMF
FNUAP	Fonds des Nations Unies pour les Activités en Matière de Population Fondo de las Naciones Unidas para Actividades en Materia de Población Other lang: UNFPA
GATT	General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade Accord Général sur les Tarifs Douaniers et le Commerce Acuerdo General sobre Aranceles Aduaneros y Comercio
HCR	Haut Commissariat des Nations Unies pour les Réfugiés Other lang: UNHCR, ACNUR
IAEA	International Atomic Energy Agency Other lang: AIEA, OIEA
ICAO	International Civil Aviation Organization Other lang: OACI
ICJ	International Court of Justice Other lang: CIJ
IDA	International Development Association Association Internationale de Développement Other lang: AIF
IFC	International Finance Corporation Other lang: SFI, CFI
IFLA	International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions Fédération Internationale des Associations de Bibliothécaires et des Bibliothèques Federación Internacional de Asociaciones de Bibliotecarios y Bibliotecas
ILO	International Labour Office Other lang: BIT, OIT International Labour Organisation Other lang: OIT

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

IMCO	Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization Other lang: OMCI, OCMI Later name: IMO
IMF	International Monetary Fund Other lang: FMI
IMO	International Maritime Organization Other lang: OMI Former name: IMCO
IPPF	International Planned Parenthood Federation Fédération Internationale pour le Planning Familial Federación Internacional de Planificación de la Familia
ISO	International Organization for Standardization Organisation Internationale de Normalisation Organización Internacional de Normalización
ITU	International Telecommunication Union Other lang: UIT
LAFTA	Latin American Free Trade Association Other lang: ALALE, ALALC Later name: LAIA
LAIA	Latin American Integration Association Other lang: ALADI Former name: LAFTA
OACI	Organisation de l'Aviation Civile Internationale Organización de Aviación Civil Internacional Other lang: ICAO
OAS	Organization of American States Other lang: OEA
OAU	Organization of African Unity Other lang: OUA
OCDE	Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques Organización de Cooperación y Desarrollo Económicos Other lang: OECD
OCMI	Organización Consultiva Marítima Intergubernamental Other lang: IMCO, OMCI Later name: OMI
OEA	Organisation des Etats Américains Organización de los Estados Americanos Other lang: OAS
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development Other lang: OCDE
OIEA	Organismo Internacional de Energía Atómica Other lang: IAEA, AIEA

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

OIT	Oficina Internacional del Trabajo Other lang: ILO, BIT Organisation Internationale du Travail Organización Internacional del Trabajo Other lang: ILO
OMCI	Organisation Intergouvernementale Consultative de la Navigation Maritime Other lang: IMCO, OCMI Later name: OMI
OMI	Organisation Maritime Internationale Organización Marítima Internacional Other lang: IMO Former name: OMCI, OCMI
OMM	Organisation Météorologique Mondiale Organización Meteorológica Mundial Other lang: WMO
OMPI	Organisation Mondiale de la Propriété Intellectuelle Organización Mundial de la Propiedad Intelectual Other lang: WIPO
OMS	Organisation Mondiale de la Santé Organización Mundial de la Salud Other lang: WHO
ONU	Organisation des Nations Unies Organización de las Naciones Unidas Other lang: UN
ONUDI	Organisation des Nations Unies pour le Développement Industriel Organización de las Naciones Unidas para el Desarrollo Industrial Other lang: UNIDO
OOPS	Organismo de Obras Públicas y Socorro de las Naciones Unidas para los Refugiados de Palestina en el Cercano Oriente Other lang: UNRWA
OPEC	Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries Other lang: OPEP
OPEP	Organisation des Pays Exportateurs de Pétrole Organización de Países Exportadores de Petróleo Other lang: OPEC
OPS	Organisation Panaméricaine de la Santé Organización Panamericana de la Salud Other lang: PAHO
OUA	Organisation de l'Unité Africaine Organización de la Unidad Africana Other lang: OAU
PAHO	Pan American Health Organization Other lang: OPS

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

PNUD	Programme des Nations Unies pour le Développement Programa de las Naciones Unidas para el Desarrollo Other lang: UNDP
PNUE	Programme des Nations Unies pour l'Environnement Other lang: UNEP, PNUMA
PNUMA	Programa de las Naciones Unidas para el Medio Ambiente Other lang: UNEP, PNUE
SFI	Société Financière Internationale Other lang: IFC, CFI
UIT	Union Internationale des Télécommunications Unión Internacional de Telecomunicaciones Other lang: ITU
UN	United Nations Other lang: ONU
UNCRD	United Nations Centre for Regional Development Other lang: CNUDR
UNCTAD	United Nations Conference on Trade and Development Conferencia de las Naciones Unidas sobre Comercio y Desarrollo Other lang: CNUCED
UNDP	United Nations Development Programme Other lang: PNUD
UNEP	United Nations Environment Programme Other lang: PNUE, PNUMA
Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization Organisation des Nations Unies pour l'Education, la Science et la Culture Organización de las Naciones Unidas para la Educación, la Ciencia y la Cultura
UNFPA	United Nations Fund for Population Activities Other lang: FNUAP
UNHCR	Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees Other lang: HCR, ACNUR
UNICEF	United Nations Children's Fund Fondo de las Naciones Unidas para la Infancia
UNIDO	United Nations Industrial Development Organization Other lang: ONUDI
UNITAR	United Nations Institute for Training and Research Institut des Nations Unies pour la Formation et la Recherche Instituto de las Naciones Unidas para la Formación Profesional y la Investigación
UNRISD	United Nations Research Institute for Social Development Institut de Recherche des Nations Unies pour le Développement Social Instituto de Investigaciones de las Naciones Unidas para el Desarrollo Social

ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

UNRWA	United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East Office de Secours et de Travaux des Nations Unies pour les Réfugiés de Palestine dans le Proche-Orient Other lang: OOPS
UPU	Universal Postal Union Union Postale Universelle Unión Postal Universal
WHO	World Health Organization Other lang: OMS
WIPO	World Intellectual Property Organization Other lang: OMPI
WMO	World Meteorological Organization Other lang: OMM

ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH "MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS"

Note The following abbreviations are used in this table:

MPR-DIS	<i>Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems</i>
MIBIS	<i>Manual for Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based Bibliographic Information Systems</i>
M-I	MICRO-ISIS
CCF	Common Communication Format
AACR2	Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd ed.
ISDS	ISDS Manual

For full bibliographic citations, see the bibliography.

MPR-DIS		MIBIS	
Field name	Tag	Tag	Comments
Resequenced record number	A100	–	For information on resequencing of records in M-I, see Annex 19
Participating centre record number	A110	001 002	In MIBIS, 001 is for acronym, and 002 is for record number proper. In M-I, 001 and 002 are created automatically at the time of data export
Library code and call number	A120	–	MIBIS field 410 is for location within the library
Library code	A121	–	
Call number	A122	411	
Bibliographic level	A130		
Level — documentary unit	A131	007	
Level — generic document	A132	008	
Related record	A140	010¹³	MIBIS has 3 fields — Record number of parent (010), of part(s) (011), and of other language version(s) (012)
Relator	A141		
Resequenced RN of related record	A142		
PCN of related record	A143		
Record status	A150	003	MIBIS uses for new records
Country of origin of document	A160	009	
AGRIIS record type	A170	–	
AGRIIS literary indicators	A180	–	
Record-access code	A190	–	
Personal author — documentary unit	B210	110 ^a,^b	MIBIS field has subfield for role

**ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS
IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”**

MPR-DIS		MIBIS	
Field name	Tag	Tag	Comments
Institution documentary unit (Idu)	B220	111	MIBIS has separate fields for corporate
Idu — name	B221	^a	author(s) (111), affiliation (112), and other
Idu — city	B222	^c	associated institutions(s) (113)
Idu — country code	B223	^d	
Idu — authority code	B224	^z	
Idu — sub-body	B225	^b	
Idu — role	B226	-	
Idu — role expanded	B227	^e	
Title of documentary unit	B230	100	MIBIS field 100 not repeatable.
		101	Parallel title entered in field 101 (CCF)
Translated title — English	B240	102	
Translated title — French	B250	103	
Translated title — Arabic	B260	-	
Translated title — Spanish	B270	104	
-	-	105	Translated title — other language
Personal author — generic document	B310	210	MIBIS field has subfield for role
		^a, ^b	
Institution — generic document (Igd)	B320	211	
Igd — name	B321	^a	
Igd — city	B322	^c	
Igd — country code	B323	^d	
Igd — authority code	B324	^z	
Igd — sub-body	B325	^b	
Title of generic document (M/C)	B330	202	
Volume/part number — collection	B340	-	MIBIS includes this in field 131 — Part statement (CCF)
Title of serial	B410	200	MIBIS has separate field for monographic series (140) (CCF). Capitalization follows ISDS and AACR2
Volume and part number — serial	B420	131	MIBIS includes pagination of part and volume no. of collection (CCF). Spacing follows AACR2
ISSN	B430	201	
Languages of text	B540	021	MIBIS field is repeatable
Languages of summaries	B560	022	MIBIS field is repeatable
-	-	020	Language of analysis

**ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS
IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”**

MPR-DIS		MIBIS	
Field name	Tag	Tag	Comments
Publisher	B610	121	
Publisher name	B611	^b	
Publisher city	B612	^a	
Publisher country code	B613	^c	
Date of imprint/issue — free form	B620	122	MIBIS allows names of seasons
Year of imprint/issue	B630	123	MIBIS field is for date in ISO form
Collation	B640	130	MIBIS field used for M/C only. Pagination of
Pagination/description	B641	^a	part entered in field 131 (CCF). Format
Collation notes	B642	^b, ^c	follows AACR2 more closely
Report number or symbol	B650	161	
ISBN	B660	160	
Edition	B670	120	
Meeting, conference, etc.	B710	114	
Meeting name and number	B711	^a	
Meeting city	B712	^b	
Meeting country code	B713	^c	
Meeting date	B714	^d	
–	–	140	Monographic series — ^a title, ^b part, ^z authority code
Academic degree	B720	141 ^b	MIBIS also includes subfields for thesis designation (^a), course (^c), and number (^d)
Patent	B730	–	
Development project	B740	142	MIBIS does not include value of investment
Project name	B741	^a	
Project number	B742	^b	
Value of investment	B743	–	
Availability	B810	162	
Ancillary data	B820	150	Notes. Field longer and not repeatable
Primary geographic area	C100	–	Same purpose served in MIBIS by entering
Secondary geographic area	C110	–	geographic descriptors in a separate field (302)
AGRIS subject categories	C120	–	
DEVSIS purpose code	C130	–	
Main category code — local	C140	320	MIBIS field is for broad subject heading
DEVSIS sectoral codes	C150	–	
Sectoral codes — local	C160	–	
Correspondence to other system	C170	–	

**ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS
IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”**

MPR-DIS		MIBIS	
Field name	Tag	Tag	Comments
Descriptors	C210	300	MIBIS has 3 fields — primary (300), secondary (301), and geographic (302)
Proposed descriptors	C220	304	
–	–	303	Local descriptors
Abstract	C310	310	
Administrative division	C410	–	Same purpose served in MIBIS by field 303 — Local descriptors
Natural regions	C430	–	
Statistical table	C510	–	
Documentalist	D100	430	Repeatable in MIBIS
Date input	D120	005	
Date changed	D140	006	
–	–	400	Processing status
–	–	410	Location(s)
–	–	412	Number of copies
–	–	413	Accession number(s)
–	–	420	Type of material
–	–	500	Acquisition type
–	–	510	Date ordered
–	–	511	Date claimed
–	–	512	Date received
–	–	513	No. of copies ordered
–	–	514	Requester(s)
–	–	515	Supplier
–	–	516	Price
–	–	517	Acquisition notes
–	–	999	Record type

MIBIS also includes fields for corporate name, serial title, and supplier authority records.

ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

This table is provided for users wishing to exchange databases with other systems via the Common Communication Format (CCF).³⁷ It shows the correspondence between the fields in the present manual (MIBIS) and the fields in the CCF.

All of the fields that are mandatory for the CCF are included in the present manual, except for CCF fields **021**, **030**, and **080**, which can be created for data export as described below.

Note Fields that are mandatory for the CCF are marked (M).

CCF field **080** is described below under **Segments**. CCF fields **021** and **030** can be supplied with a constant value in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility, as follows:

1. **Field 021A**, level of completeness code. The codes are:

- A** All mandatory and all optional elements provided,
- B** All mandatory elements provided, and
- C** Less than all mandatory elements provided.

Create this field in the reformatting FST containing either **B** or **C** (depending on whichever statement is true about all of the records in your database).

2. **Field 030**, character sets used in record. Information to be entered in this field is described in detail in the CCF itself.

Indicators

In the CCF, the first two characters of each field (before the first subfield delimiter) are reserved for numeric codes, called indicators, that give further information about the contents of the field or that indicate how the field is to be manipulated.

MIBIS does not include indicators. However, if data are being exported to a system that uses indicators, a default value of 00 may be supplied in front of each field in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility. For example, the format to transfer field **100** to CCF field **200A** would be:

```
200 0 "00^A"v100
```

Segments

The CCF uses the term “segments” to denote sections of the bibliographic record that relate to different bibliographic items. It terms the part of the record that describes the target item as the primary segment, or segment 0. Other segments are termed secondary segments. The part of the record that describes an item at the next higher level in the hierarchical relationship is termed segment 1.

In MIBIS, there is a maximum of two segments in a record. The section of the record that describes the item in hand is equivalent to segment 0, and the section of the record that describes the parent item is equivalent to segment 1. MIBIS fields **008**, **010**, **200**, **201**, **202**, **210**, and **211** always belong

³⁷ Simmons, Peter, and Hopkinson, Alan, eds. *CCF: the Common Communication Format*. 2nd ed. Paris, Unesco, 1988. (PGI-88/WS/2)

ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

to segment 1. When the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection (bibliographic level AM or AC), MIBIS fields 120, 121, 160, and 161 will belong to segment 1.

CCF field 080 (Segment linking field: general vertical relationship) should be created whenever segment 1 is present, that is, whenever MIBIS field 008 (Bibliographic level — parent) is present. CCF field 080 will always contain the code 02 in subfield A, and the code 0 in subfield B. In addition, the contents of field 008 will be transferred to CCF field 015 — Bibliographic level of secondary segment. For example, if field 008 contains M, CCF field 080 should be created containing: ^A02^B0, and CCF field 015 should be created containing: ^AM.

MIBIS		CCF	
001	Participating centre acronym	020A	Source of record (M) Identification of agency in coded form
002	Participating centre record number	001	Record identifier (M)
003	Record status	–	(No CCF field)
–	(Supply default value in reformatting FST)	021A	Level of completeness code (M)
–	(Supply data in reformatting FST)	030	Character sets used in record (M)
005	Date record entered	022A	Date entered on file (M)
006	Date record changed	–	(No CCF field)
007	Bibliographic level	–	Character 7 of CCF record label
008	Bibliographic level — parent	015A	Bibliographic level of secondary segment
009	Country of origin	–	(No CCF field)
010	Record no. of parent	010A	Record identifier for secondary segments
011	Record no. of part(s)	–	(Do not transfer to a CCF field)
012	Record no. of other language version(s)	–	(Do not transfer to a CCF field)
020	Language of analysis	031A	Language of the record (M) (CCF codes are 3-letter)
021	Language(s) of text	040A	Language of item (M) (CCF codes are 3-letter)
022	Language(s) of summaries	041A	Language of the summary (CCF codes are 3-letter)
100	Title	200A	Title (M)
101	Parallel title(s)	210A	Parallel title

ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

MIBIS		CCF	
102	Translated title — English	–	(No CCF field)
103	Translated title — French	–	(No CCF field)
104	Translated title — Spanish	–	(No CCF field)
105	Translated title — other	–	(No CCF field)
110	Personal author(s) ^a Personal author ^b Role	300	Name of person (M) ^A Entry element ^B Other name elements ^C Additional elements ^F Role (noncoded)
111	Corporate author(s) ^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code ^z Authority code	310	Name of corporate body (M) ^A Entry element ^B Other parts of name ^D Address of corp. body ^E Country of corp. body ^Z Authority number
112	Affiliation ^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code ^z Authority code	330	Affiliation ^A Entry element ^B Other parts of name ^D Address ^E Country of affil. –
113	Other associated institutions(s) ^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code ^e Role ^z Authority code	310	Name of corporate body (M) ^A Entry element ^B Other parts of name ^D Address of corp. body ^E Country of corp. body ^G Role (noncoded) ^Z Authority number
114	Meeting(s) ^a Meeting name and number ^b Place ^c Country code ^d Dates ^e Date — ISO form	320	Name of meeting (M) ^A Entry element ^J Number of meeting ^G Location of meeting ^E Country ^I Date of meeting (in free format) ^H Date of meeting (in ISO format)
120	Edition	260A	Edition statement (M)
121	Publisher ^a Publication place ^b Publisher ^c Country code	400	Place of publication and publisher (M) ^A Place of publication ^B Name of publisher ^D Country of publisher

ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

MIBIS		CCF	
122	Date of publication/issue — free form	440B	Date in nonformalized form
123	Date of publication/issue — ISO form	440A	Date in formalized form (M)
130	Collation (M/C) ^a Number of pages/pieces ^b Description ^c Dimensions	460	Physical description ^A Number of pieces and designation ^B Other descriptive details ^C Dimensions
131	Part statement ^a Volume/issue number ^b Pagination of part	490	Part statement (M) ^A Volume/part numeration and designation ^B Pagination defining a part
140	Monographic series ^a Series title ^b Series part	480	Series statement and associated statement of responsibility ^A Series statement ^B Statement of responsibility ^C Part statement (M)
141	Thesis ^a Thesis designation ^b Degree ^c Course ^d Number	–	(No CCF field. Included as note in field 500.)
142	Project(s) ^a Project name ^b Project number	–	(No CCF field)
150	Notes	500A	Note
160	ISBN(s)	100A	ISBN (M)
161	Document number(s)	120A	Document identification number
162	Availability	–	(No CCF field. Included as note in field 500.)
200	Title of serial	201A	Key title
201	ISSN	101A	ISSN (M)
202	Title of parent (M/C)	200A	Title
210	Personal author(s) — parent ^a Personal author ^b Role	300	Name of person ^A Entry element ^B Other name elements ^C Additional elements ^F Role (noncoded)

ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

MIBIS		CCF	
211	Corporate author(s) — parent ^a Main body ^b Sub-body ^c Place ^d Country code ^z Authority code	310	Name of corporate body ^A Entry element ^B Other parts of name ^D Address of corp. body ^E Country of corp. body ^Z Authority number
300	Primary descriptors	620A	Subject descriptor (CCF field 620B , identification of subject system, may be created, containing the name of the thesaurus used for indexing, in the reformatting FST)
301	Secondary descriptors	620A	Subject descriptor
302	Geographic descriptors	620A	Subject descriptor
303	Local descriptors	–	(No CCF field)
304	Proposed descriptors	–	(No CCF field)
310	Abstract	600A	Abstract
320	Broad subject heading	–	(No CCF field)

The remainder of the MIBIS fields are local and do not have equivalents in the CCF.

Acronym

A word or set of initials formed of the initial letters of the significant words in a compound name, e.g., Unesco, UN.

Analytic level

See Bibliographic level

Any table

A list of terms that a particular documentation centre has chosen to group together to facilitate on-line retrieval. For example, an any table entitled “Any Africa” would comprise the names of all the countries and regions of Africa. A search using the search term “Any Africa” would automatically retrieve all records relating to any of the countries and regions of Africa.

Authority file

A tool to ensure consistency among like elements in bibliographic records by indicating the form of entry established for use in a particular information system. Examples include a Corporate Name Authority File, a personal name authority file, and a thesaurus of subject descriptors.

Bibliographic level

Indicates where the item stands in a set of hierarchical relationships. The following bibliographic levels have been identified:

Analytic

Refers to an item that is not issued separately but as part of a larger work, such as an article from a periodical or a chapter or contribution from a monograph.

Monographic

Refers to an item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map.

Collective

Refers to a multivolume item, composed of a finite number of volumes, issued either at the same time or over a period, that is complete in its own right, such as a two-volume report or a multivolume encyclopedia.

Serial

Refers to a publication issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing a chronological and/or numerical designation, and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, a newspaper, an annual report, or a monographic series.

Bibliographic record

A set of information describing one bibliographic item, stored in machine-readable form in a database.

Broader term (BT)

In a hierarchical arrangement of concepts, a concept that is more general than the concepts below it. For example, the term “fruit” is a broader term of the terms “apples”, “oranges”, and “grapes”.

Collection

A multivolume item comprising two or more physical pieces issued together or over a period of time. Examples include a two-volume report, and a multivolume encyclopedia.

Collective level

See Bibliographic level

Corporate body

An organization or group of persons that is identified by a name and acts as an entity. Corporate bodies include associations, institutions, governments, international organizations, and business firms.

Cross reference

An instruction directing the user from one heading in a catalogue or index to another. Cross references include “see” and “see also”, as well as the broader terms, narrower terms, etc. in a thesaurus.

Database

A set of machine-readable records that are standardized in format.

Descriptor

A word or phrase describing a concept, listed in a thesaurus, and used for subject indexing and retrieval.

Field

Part of a computer record reserved for a particular element of information, such as personal author, corporate author, or title.

Field tag

A group of characters that serves to identify a field in a database.

Heading

A name, word, or phrase entered in a standardized form that serves to provide an access point in a catalogue or index. For example, each author entered in the personal author field serves as a heading under which his or her works will be listed in the catalogue.

Information system

A complete system designed for the collection, organization, storage, retrieval, and dissemination of information.

Inverted file

A system-created computer file that acts as an index to selected items of information in the database. It contains information about the location of the information (record number and field tag), and thus facilitates information retrieval in the same way as the index of a book leads the user to desired information. (The alternative to inverted file searching is “free-text searching” in which the system scans each record in the database to find the desired information.)

Item

A document, set of documents, or part of a document, in any physical form, treated as an entity and as such forming the basis for a single bibliographic description.

Language of analysis

The language of the system chosen for recording information such as the notes, the descriptors, and the abstract. In a unilingual system, the language of analysis is the language of the system. In a multilingual system, the language of analysis is one of the languages of the system.

Level

See Bibliographic level.

Monograph

An item complete in one physical volume.

Monographic level

See Bibliographic level

Monographic series

A group of separate monographs issued in succession by the same publisher and in uniform style, intended to be continued indefinitely, and related to one another by the fact that each one bears, in addition to its own title, a common title applying to the group as a whole.

Narrower term (NT)

In a hierarchical arrangement of concepts, a concept that is more specific than the concept above it. For example, the term “apples” is a narrower term of the term “fruit”.

Parallel title

Another language version of the title, found on the title page or title page substitute.

Patronymic

A name derived from the given name of the father, often by the addition of a suffix.

Periodical

A serial issued at regular intervals, more frequently than annually, each issue of which contains articles by more than one contributor.

Repeatable field

A field that may occur more than once in a given computer record. For example, the author field is repeatable to allow each author to feature as a heading in a catalogue or index.

Serial

A publication issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing numerical or chronological designations, and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, newsletters, annuals, and monographic series.

Serial level

See Bibliographic level

Series

See Monographic series

Subfield

Part of a subfielded field.

ANNEX 15: GLOSSARY

Subfielded field

A field that is divided into separate parts, or subfields, each of which is reserved for a particular element of the information entered in the field. For example, in the publisher field, the place of publication and the publisher name are entered in separate subfields.

Subordinate body

A corporate body that forms an integral part of a larger body, in relation to which it holds an inferior hierarchical rank.

ANNEX 16: BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules*. 2nd ed., 1988 revision. Chicago, American Library Association, 1988.
2. Di Lauro, Anne. *IDIN Manual for the Creation and Management of a Bibliographic Data Base using MICRO-ISIS*. (Prepared on behalf of the OECD Development Centre for the Inter-Regional Co-ordinating Committee of Development Associations). Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1988.
3. Di Lauro, Anne, and Sly, Maureen. *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*. Ottawa, International Development Research Centre, 1985. (Recommended Methods for Development-Information Systems, v. 2) (IDRC-TS52e)
4. *Europa Yearbook: a World Survey*. London, Europa Publications. (annual publication)
5. Gachie, Isabelle, and Lohlé-Tart, L. *Handling CDS-ISIS: Learning the Basic Notions of the CDS-ISIS Information Retrieval System, Version 3.0*. Paris, Unesco, 1992. (PGI-92/WS/15)
6. *Heurisko: a User-friendly Search Interface for Micro CDS/ISIS*. Paris, Unesco, 1993.
7. *INMAGIC Plus: Library Guide*. Cambridge, MA, Inmagic Inc., 1992.
8. *INMAGIC Plus: User's Manual, Version 1.0*. Cambridge, MA, Inmagic Inc., 1992.
9. International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Names of Persons: National Usages for Entry in Catalogues*. 3rd ed. London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1977.
10. International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Names of States: an Authority List of Language Forms for Catalogue Entries*. London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1981.
11. International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions. International Office for UBC. *Supplement to Names of Persons: National Usages for Entry in Catalogues*. London, IFLA International Office for UBC, 1980.
12. International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Currencies and Funds*. 4th ed. Geneva, ISO, 1990. (ISO 4217-1990)
13. International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Names of Countries*. 4th ed. Geneva, ISO, 1993. (ISO 3166-1993). (Updated by *ISO 3166 Newsletter*, Berlin, ISO 3166 Maintenance Agency Secretariat. Irregular)
14. International Organization for Standardization. *Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages*. Geneva, ISO, 1988. (ISO 639-1988)
15. International Organization for Standardization. *Data Elements and Interchange Formats — Information Exchange — Representation of Dates and Times*. Geneva, ISO, 1988. (ISO 8601-1988)

ANNEX 16: BIBLIOGRAPHY

16. International Organization for Standardization. *Documentation — Format for Bibliographic Information Interchange on Magnetic Tape*. 2nd ed. Geneva, ISO, 1981. (ISO 2709-1981)
17. International Organization for Standardization. *Documentation — Romanization of Japanese (Kana Script)*. Geneva, ISO, 1989. (ISO 3602-1989)
18. International Organization for Standardization. *Documentation — Transliteration of Hebrew Characters into Latin Characters*. Geneva, ISO, 1984. (ISO 259-1984)
19. International Organization for Standardization. *Documentation — Transliteration of Slavic Cyrillic Characters into Latin Characters*. Geneva, ISO, 1986. (ISO 9-1986)
20. International Organization for Standardization. *Information and Documentation — Romanization of Chinese*. 2nd ed. Geneva, ISO, 1991. (ISO 7098-1991)
21. International Organization for Standardization. *Information and Documentation — Transliteration of Arabic Characters into Latin Characters*. Geneva, ISO, 1984. (ISO 233 - 1984)
22. International Organization for Standardization. *Information and Documentation — Transliteration of Arabic Characters into Latin Characters. Part 2: Arabic Language — Simplified Transliteration*. Geneva, ISO, 1993. (ISO 233-2: 1993)
23. International Organization for Standardization. *International System for the Transliteration of Greek Characters into Latin Characters*. Geneva, ISO, 1968. (ISO/R 843-1968). (Draft revision DIS 843 in preparation)
24. International Serials Data System. *ISDS Manual*. Paris, ISDS International Centre, 1983, with revisions to Sept 1987.
25. *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*. 4th ed. Paris, Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development, 1991.
26. *Macrothesaurus para el Procesamiento de la Información relativa al Desarrollo Económico y Social*. 4a ed. Paris, Organización de Cooperación y Desarrollo Económicos, 1991.
27. *Macrothesaurus pour le traitement de l'information relative au développement économique et social*. 4^e éd. Paris, Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques, 1991.
28. Morin-Labatut, Gisèle, and Sly, Maureen. *Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems*. Ottawa, International Development Research Centre, 1982. (Recommended Methods for Development-Information Systems, v. 1) (IDRC-TS40e)
29. Simmons, Peter, and Hopkinson, Alan. *CCF: the Common Communication Format*. 2nd ed. Paris, Unesco, 1988. (PGI-88/WS/2)
30. *Times Atlas of the World: Comprehensive Edition*. 9th ed. London, Times Books, 1992.

ANNEX 16: BIBLIOGRAPHY

31. Unesco. Division of Software Development and Applications. *Mini-micro CDS/ISIS, CDS/ISIS PASCAL (Version 2.3)*. Paris Unesco, 1989. [This manual is used with version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS. A file called READ.ME on the distribution diskette provides additional information unique to version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS.]
32. Unesco. Division of Software Development and Applications. *Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (Version 2.3)*. Paris Unesco, 1989. [This manual is used with version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS. A file called READ.ME on the distribution diskette provides additional information unique to version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS.]
33. United Nations. Department of Conference Services. Documentation and Terminology Section. *Acronyms and Abbreviations Covering the United Nations System and Other International Organizations*. New York, United Nations, 1981. (Terminology Bulletin no. 311/rev.1) (ST/CS/SER.F/311/rev.1)
34. United Nations. Department of Conference Services. Documentation, Reference and Terminology Section. *Names of Countries and Adjectives of Nationality / Noms de pays et adjectifs de nationalité / Nombres de Países y Adjectivos Gentilicos*. New York, United Nations, 1985. (Terminology Bulletin no. 333) (ST/CS/SER.F/333) (and amendments)
35. *World of Learning*. London, Europa Publications. (annual publication)
36. *Yearbook of International Organizations*. Brussels, Union of International Associations. (annual publication)

CONTENTS

- Example 1. Monograph
- Example 2. Monograph (conference proceedings). The system uses corporate name authority records
- Example 3. Monograph in a monographic series
- Example 4. Chapter from a monograph
- Example 5. Collection
- Example 6. Chapter from a collection
- Example 7. Monograph from a collection
- Example 8. Article from a periodical

EXAMPLE 1

INPUT SHEET

MFN	25
-----	----

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	M	009	Country of origin	DE
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent	011	Parts	012	Other lang	
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis En	021	Text En	022	Summaries	
100	Title	Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign				
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s)	^aCrowley, D.%^aEtherington, A.%^aKidd, R.				
111	Corporate author(s)					
112	Affiliation					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition	2d rev. ed.				
121	Publisher	^aBonn^bFriedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media Dept.^cDE				
122	Date — free form	1981	123	Date — ISO form	1981-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	^a186 p.^bill.		131	Part	
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160 ISBN(s)	161 Doc no(s)
162 Availability	

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200 Title of serial	
201 ISSN	
202 Title of parent (M/C)	
210 Personal author(s) — parent	
211 Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300 Primary descriptors	<MANUALS><EDUCATIONAL RADIO><ADULT EDUCATION> <NON-FORMAL EDUCATION>
301 Secondary descriptors	<NATIONAL LEVEL><DEVELOPING COUNTRIES><ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS><TRAINING>
302 Geographic descriptors	<BOTSWANA>
303 Local descriptors	
304 Proposed descriptors	
310 Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320 Broad subject	<i>Education and training</i>

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400 Processing status	CAT	410 Location(s)	MAIN
411 Call no	371.33 C7 1981	412 No of copies	2
413 Accession no(s)	13277%13278		
420 Type of material	MONO	430 Documentalist(s)	OD

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	M	009	Country of origin	FR
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent 011 Parts 10 012 Other lang					
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis En 021 Text En 022 Summaries					
100	Title <i>Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa</i>					
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s) ^aRose, Tore^bed.					
111	Corporate author(s)					
112	Affiliation ^z12^eSponsor%^z23^eSponsor%^z43^eSponsor					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s) ^aConference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa^bParis^cFR^d14-16 Nov 1984^e1984-11-14					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher ^aParis^bOECD^cFR					
122	Date — free form	1985	123	Date — ISO form	1985-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	^a335 p.		131	Part	
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160	ISBN(s)	92-64-12749-6	161	Doc no(s)
162	Availability			

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial			
201	ISSN			
202	Title of parent (M/C)			
210	Personal author(s) — parent			
211	Corporate author(s) — parent			

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<ECONOMIC RECESSION><ECONOMIC POLICY><INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS>		
301	Secondary descriptors	<ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT><SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT><CONFERENCE REPORTS>		
302	Geographic descriptors	<AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA>		
303	Local descriptors			
304	Proposed descriptors			
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>		
320	Broad subject	Development - general		

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	LIST	410	Location(s)	MAIN
411	Call no	330.1(6) ROS	412	No of copies	1
413	Accession no(s)	13270			
420	Type of material	MONO	430	Documentalist(s)	ZY%BA

EXAMPLE 3

INPUT SHEET

MFN 41

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	M S	009	Country of origin	US
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent 011 Parts 012 Other lang					
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis En 021 Text En 022 Summaries					
100	Title Case studies in population policy : Nigeria					
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s)					
111	Corporate author(s) ^aUN^bPopulation Division^cNew York, NY^dUS					
112	Affiliation					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher ^aNew York, NY^bUN^cUS					
122	Date — free form	1988	123	Date — ISO form	1988-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	^a38 p.	131	Part		
140	Mono series ^aPopulation policy paper^bno. 16					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160	ISBN(s)	161	Doc no(s)	ST/ESA/SER.R/83
162	Availability			

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial
201	ISSN
202	Title of parent (M/C)
210	Personal author(s) — parent
211	Corporate author(s) — parent

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<POPULATION POLICY><DEVELOPMENT PLANS>
301	Secondary descriptors	<POPULATION CENSUSES><STATISTICAL TABLES>
302	Geographic descriptors	<NIGERIA>
303	Local descriptors	
304	Proposed descriptors	
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320	Broad subject	Population

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	LIST	410	Location(s)	MAIN
411	Call no	312(669) UN	412	No of copies	1
413	Accession no(s)	13286			
420	Type of material	UND	430	Documentalist(s)	ZY%BA

EXAMPLE 4

INPUT SHEET

MFN

27

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	A M	009	Country of origin	FR
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent	011	Parts	012	Other lang	
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis <i>En</i>	021	Text <i>Fr</i>	022	Summaries	
100	Title	<La> contribution des buy'em sell'em au développement				
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title ②3/4/5 E/F/S/o	<The> contribution of the "buy'em sell'em" to development				
110	Personal author(s)	^aN'Sangou, A.				
111	Corporate author(s)					
112	Affiliation	^aInstitut des Sciences Humaines^cYaoundé^dCM				
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher	^aBondy^bOrstom^cFR				
122	Date — free form	1985	123	Date — ISO form	1985-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	131		Part	^bp. 385-392	
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160	ISBN(s)	2-86537-129-8	161	Doc no(s)
162	Availability			

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial	
201	ISSN	
202	Title of parent (M/C)	<i>Femmes du Cameroun : mères pacifiques, femmes rebelles</i>
210	Personal author(s) — parent	<i>^aBarbier, J.C.^bed.</i>
211	Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<PURCHASING><MARKETING><WOMEN'S ROLE>
301	Secondary descriptors	<FOOD>
302	Geographic descriptors	<CAMEROON>
303	Local descriptors	
304	Proposed descriptors	
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320	Broad subject	<i>Trade</i>

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	<i>CAT</i>	410	Location(s)	<i>MAIN</i>
411	Call no	<i>396 BAR</i>	412	No of copies	<i>1</i>
413	Accession no(s)	<i>13279</i>			
420	Type of material	<i>PART</i>	430	Documentalist(s)	<i>JK</i>

EXAMPLE 5

INPUT SHEET

MFN

28

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	C	009	Country of origin	CH
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent 011 Parts 29 012 Other lang					
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis <i>En</i> 021 Text <i>En</i> 022 Summaries					
100	Title <i>Rural development and women : lessons from the field</i>					
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s) ^aMuntemba, S.^bed.					
111	Corporate author(s) ^aILO^cGeneva^dCH					
112	Affiliation					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher ^aGeneva^bILO^cCH					
122	Date — free form	1985	123	Date — ISO form	1985-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	^a2 v	131	Part		
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160	ISBN(s)	92-2-105154-4	161	Doc no(s)
162	Availability			

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial	
201	ISSN	
202	Title of parent (M/C)	
210	Personal author(s) — parent	
211	Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION><RURAL EMPLOYMENT><AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION>
301	Secondary descriptors	<MARKETING><CREDIT><WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS><CASE STUDIES><PROJECT EVALUATION>
302	Geographic descriptors	
303	Local descriptors	
304	Proposed descriptors	
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320	Broad subject	Labour

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	CAT	410	Location(s)	MAIN
411	Call no	396 MUN	412	No of copies	1
413	Accession no(s)	13280			
420	Type of material	MONO	430	Documentalist(s)	JK.

EXAMPLE 6

INPUT SHEET

MFN

29

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	A C	009	Country of origin	CH
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent 28	011	Parts	012	Other lang	
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis En	021	Text En	022	Summaries	
100	Title Savings clubs : the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe					
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s) ^aChimedza, R.					
111	Corporate author(s)					
112	Affiliation ^aUniversity of Zimbabwe^bDepartment of Land Management^cHarare^dZW					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher ^aGeneva^bILO^cCH					
122	Date — free form	1985	123	Date — ISO form	1985-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)		131	Part	^av. 1^bp. 161-174	
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

INPUT SHEET

page 2

160	ISBN(s)	92-2-105152-8	161	Doc no(s)
162	Availability			

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial	
201	ISSN	
202	Title of parent (M/C)	<i>Rural development and women : lessons from the field</i>
210	Personal author(s) — parent	<i>^aMuntemba, S.^bed.</i>
211	Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<i><CREDIT COOPERATIVES><SAVINGS><WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION></i>
301	Secondary descriptors	<i><CASE STUDIES></i>
302	Geographic descriptors	<i><ZIMBABWE></i>
303	Local descriptors	
304	Proposed descriptors	
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320	Broad subject	<i>Finance</i>

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	<i>CAT</i>	410	Location(s)	<i>MF111%MAIN</i>
411	Call no	<i>396 MUN</i>	412	No of copies	<i>1</i>
413	Accession no(s)	<i>13281</i>			
420	Type of material	<i>PART</i>	430	Documentalist(s)	<i>JK</i>

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	M C	009	Country of origin	CA
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent	011	Parts	012	Other lang	24
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis En	021	Text En	022	Summaries	
100	Title	Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems				
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s)	^aMorin-Labatut, Gisèle% ^aSly, Maureen				
111	Corporate author(s)	^aInternational Development Research Centre^bInformation Sciences Division^cOttawa, ON^dCA				
112	Affiliation					
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)	^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bOttawa, ON^cCA^d3-7 Nov 1981^e1981-11-03% ^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bMont Sainte-Marie, PQ^cCA^d9-13 Nov 1981^e1981-11-09				
120	Edition					
121	Publisher	^aOttawa, ON^bIDRC^cCA				
122	Date — free form	1982	123	Date — ISO form	1982-00-00	
130	Collation (M/C)	^a272 p.		131	Part	^av. 1
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160	ISBN(s)	0-88936-354-4	161	Doc no(s)	IDRC-TS40e
162	Availability				

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200	Title of serial	
201	ISSN	
202	Title of parent (M/C)	<i>Recommended methods for development-information systems</i>
210	Personal author(s) — parent	
211	Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300	Primary descriptors	<MANUALS><CATALOGUING><INFORMATION ANALYSIS>
301	Secondary descriptors	<DEVSIS><INDEXING><CONTENT ANALYSIS><AGRIS> <METHODOLOGY><ISIS>
302	Geographic descriptors	
303	Local descriptors	<MINISIS>
304	Proposed descriptors	
310	Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
320	Broad subject	Information systems

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400	Processing status	LIST	410	Location(s)	REF%MAIN
411	Call no	025.315 MOR	412	No of copies	2
413	Accession no(s) 13265%13266				
420	Type of material	MONO	430	Documentalist(s)	CD

This publication contains guidelines for the record structure and content of bibliographic records in development-information systems. It is intended to be a guide for the designers of new systems and for those seeking to improve existing systems. The manual is the result of 5-6 years experience with a variety of regional and national DEVSIS (Development Sciences Information System) systems and can be considered to be an update of the technical recommendations of the DEVSIS Study Team in 1975. The major part of the manual contains field-by-field guidelines to be used by a documentalist when creating records in a development-information system. Numerous annexes are appended, including a data-definition table, sample completed worksheets, a correspondence for UNISIST and AGRIS field tags, guidelines for implementation under MINISIS, CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary, and a bibliography.

005	Date record entered 1994-04-08	Bib level: 007 008	A S	009	Country of origin	GB
010	<u>Record nos. of:</u> Parent	011	Parts	012	Other lang	
020	<u>Language(s) of:</u> Analysis <i>En</i>	021	Text <i>En</i>	022	Summaries	
100	Title	<i>Low-cost tubewells for developing countries</i>				
101	Parallel title(s)					
10-	Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o					
110	Personal author(s)	<i>^aMal, B.C.%^aMishra, A.P.</i>				
111	Corporate author(s)					
112	Affiliation	<i>^aRajendra Agricultural University^bCollege of Agricultural Engineering^cSamastipur^dIN</i>				
113	Other assoc instit(s)					
114	Meeting(s)					
120	Edition					
121	Publisher					
122	Date — free form	<i>Sep 1986</i>	123	Date — ISO form	<i>1986-09-00</i>	
130	Collation (M/C)	131		Part	<i>^av. 4, no. 3^bp. 197-203</i>	
140	Mono series					
141	Thesis					
142	Project(s)					
150	Notes					

160 ISBN(s)	161 Doc no(s)
162 Availability	

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

200 Title of serial	<i>International journal for development technology</i>
201 ISSN	0263-418X
202 Title of parent (M/C)	
210 Personal author(s) — parent	
211 Corporate author(s) — parent	

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

300 Primary descriptors	<IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT><PUMPS><GROUNDWATER> <APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY>
301 Secondary descriptors	<BAMBOO><COST ANALYSIS>
302 Geographic descriptors	
303 Local descriptors	
304 Proposed descriptors	
310 Abstract	CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED <input type="checkbox"/>
320 Broad subject	<i>Water</i>

LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

400 Processing status	<i>CAT</i>	410 Location(s)	<i>MF176</i>
411 Call no		412 No of copies	<i>1</i>
413 Accession no(s)	<i>13282</i>		
420 Type of material	<i>PER</i>	430 Documentalist(s)	<i>JK</i>

ANNEX 18: DATA EXCHANGE PROCEDURES IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

This annex provides guidance to the practical procedures for data exchange in a formal information network, using MICRO-ISIS.

Information networks are discussed in the **Introduction, Section 9**. In a formal network, participants send the records they have created to a coordinating centre on a diskette. The coordinating centre merges the records into a common database and disseminates the information in various forms.

The recommended procedures for data exchange are:

- 1) For each new item that is to be submitted to the coordinating centre (CC), the participating centre (PC) enters the code N in **field 003** — Record status.
This is done at the time the item is being catalogued.
- 2) At regular intervals (weekly, fortnightly, or monthly, depending on the rate of growth of the PC's database), a search is carried out to identify the records for all items that have been flagged for input to the centralized database (i.e., those that have N in **field 003**). These records are saved in a "save" file.
- 3) To transfer the records to the CC, the PC uses the data export option of the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility. The "save" file (created in step 2) is used as input. At the same time, the following fields are created in the reformatting FST:

001 Participating centre acronym, containing the acronym of the participating centre

002 Participating centre record number, containing the MFN of the record

If the network is multilingual, and if the PC has a unilingual information system, **field 020** — Language of analysis will also be created at this time, containing the code for the language of the system.

- 4) If the PC is using computerized authority records, the subfield containing the authority code (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) should be replaced by the appropriate data from the authority record, through the reformatting FST.
- 5) The other fields remain the same. There is no need to transfer acquisitions fields.
- 6) The PC changes the record status code in **field 003** from N to S, to identify those records that have been sent to the CC. A program to carry out this change automatically is included on the diskette. It is called CHANGE.
- 7) Using the data import option of the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility, the CC enters the PC's new records into the centralized database, where they are automatically assigned new record numbers (MFNs). The CC must supply the first available MFN, and specify M for merge in the import menu. The PC's MFN is retained in **field 002**.
- 8) Note that the MFNs entered in **fields 010, 011, and 012** (record numbers of parent, parts, and other language versions) are the MFNs of those records in the PC database. Refer to **Annex 19, Section VII — Exchanging data in a formal information network** for information on how these record numbers can be automatically translated at the CC into the new MFNs assigned by MICRO-ISIS.
- 9) The PC should notify the CC in writing of records to be changed or deleted.

✶ The reformatting FST to be used by the PC for exporting data to the CC has been included on the diskette. It is called XCHANG.FST.

This annex describes the MICRO-ISIS implementation of the bibliographic database located on the diskette enclosed with this manual. Information is provided here on the sample database, the associated data entry worksheets and reports, and the procedures required to install and use the database effectively. It is assumed in this annex that users are familiar with MICRO-ISIS and its terminology.

CONTENTS

- I OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE
- II INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER
- III THE SAMPLE APPLICATION
- IV DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION
 - 1. Worksheets for bibliographic records
 - 2. Worksheets for authority records
- V DISPLAY FORMATS
 - 1. Display formats for bibliographic records (MIBIS)
 - 2. Display formats for acquisitions records (MIBIS)
 - 3. Display formats for authority records (MIBIS)
 - 4. Display format for data verification (MIBIS)
 - 5. Display formats supplied with other databases
 - 6. CDS-PASCAL format exits
 - 7. Changing the display formats to improve performance
- VI REPORT GENERATION
 - 1. Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin
 - 2. Resequencing the data for printed bibliographic indexes
 - 3. Generating the printed bibliographic indexes
 - 4. Printing the Corporate Name Authority File
 - 5. Printing the Serials Authority File
 - 6. Printing the supplier authority file
 - 7. Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders
- VII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK
 - 1. Preparing the reformatting FST
 - 2. Sending data to the coordinating centre
- VIII CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS
- IX INVERSION
- X LIMITATION OF CDS-PASCAL
- XI HEURISKO
- XII COMPLETE LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE MICRO-ISIS IMPLEMENTATION
 - 1. Directory structure
 - 2. Directory contents
- XIII SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

I OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE

The enclosed diskette contains a sample database called **MIBIS**, consisting of records that demonstrate most of the features described in this manual. The diskette is organized into eight directories:

- directory **MIBIS**, which contains the **MIBIS** database described in this manual, and supporting MICRO-ISIS files (display formats, data entry worksheets, etc.).
- directory **MIBIS2**, which contains the **MIBIS2** database. MIBIS2 is derived from the MIBIS database by sequencing bibliographic records by Broad subject heading (**field 320**). The printed bibliographic indexes described in this annex are produced from the MIBIS2 database.
- directory **CORP**, which contains the **CORP** database that is used to produce the printed list of the Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF).
- directory **SERIAL**, which contains the **SERIAL** database which is used to produce the printed list of the Serials Authority File (SAF).
- directory **ISISPAS**, which contains programs and format exits written in the CDS/ISIS PASCAL language. These are used to perform many of the operations described in this annex. (CDS/ISIS PASCAL is referred to as CDS-PASCAL throughout the annex.)
- directory **SAVE**, which contains the save files for the retrievals described in this annex.
- directory **SAFE**, which contains variations of some of the display formats and sort worksheets. These can be used as alternatives in situations in which the display formats found in directories MIBIS and MIBIS2 may cause unpredictable results. Refer to **Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL**.
- directory **INMAGIC**, which contains a less complete implementation of the same sample database using INMAGIC Plus software. This is described in **Annex 20**.

The MICRO-ISIS implementation is based on Mini-Micro CDS/ISIS, Version 3.07, dated 24 November 1993. Not all the features used will work on earlier versions (e.g., Version 2.3 or Version 3.0).

There is a file called READ.ME in the root directory of the diskette enclosed with this manual. It may contain last-minute notes about the sample implementation

II INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER

To use the sample application, you must do the following:

- Create separate directories on your hard disk for each of the databases (MIBIS, MIBIS2, CORP, and SERIAL).
- Create the appropriate database parameter files (MIBIS.PAR, MIBIS2.PAR, CORP.PAR, and SERIAL.PAR) to enable MICRO-ISIS to access the databases and their definitions. To use the predefined worksheets to produce printed catalogues and bibliographic indexes, and to use the programs written in CDS-PASCAL, you must keep the databases in separate directories, and you should not rename any of the databases.
- Copy the files from the diskette, using the XCOPY DOS command, to the appropriate directories on your hard disk. If your version of DOS does not have this command, use COPY.
- If one does not already exist, create a directory on your hard disk to hold the CDS-PASCAL programs and format exits. You may, alternatively, choose to keep CDS-PASCAL programs with the ISIS.EXE program.

- If you created a directory for CDS-PASCAL programs, ensure that this directory is properly referenced by the CDS-PASCAL program path parameter (parameter 1) in the system parameter file (SYSPAR.PAR).
- Copy the CDS-PASCAL programs from the ISISPAS directory on the diskette to the directory you created on the hard disk for CDS-PASCAL programs. If you did not create a directory on your hard disk, copy these files to the directory containing ISIS.EXE.
- Copy the save files from the SAVE directory to the directory where MICRO-ISIS keeps its work files. This may be a separate directory set up for this purpose (indicated by parameter 4 in the system parameter file), or the directory in which ISIS.EXE resides.

There are references throughout the remainder of this annex to optional changes to be made to the display formats, inversion and reformatting field select tables (FSTs), data entry worksheets, and a program. The applicability of the changes is determined by whether you are part of a formal information network, the language(s) of the system, and the use of computerized authority files. It is also expected that you may not require all the fields, or may wish to modify the sample implementation in other ways to suit your particular needs.

With two exceptions, you need not make any of the changes suggested. The sample implementation has been constructed in such a way as to function correctly regardless of the options you choose to use. One exception applies for the exchange of data in a formal information network. In this situation, you must make the indicated changes to the reformatting FST (see **Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network**). The other exception applies to the printing of purchase orders and claims for overdue orders. Before running these reports, you must make the indicated changes to the program that prints them (see **Section VI, part 7**).

III THE SAMPLE APPLICATION

Although four databases are defined, you will only work directly with one: MIBIS. All bibliographic and authority records are maintained in this database. The other databases are used only occasionally to produce printed bibliographic indexes and authority files. When they are required, special CDS-PASCAL programs copy the necessary data from MIBIS to the appropriate database.

As well as bibliographic records, the MIBIS sample database contains corporate name, serials, and supplier authority records. MICRO-ISIS requires that computerized authority records, if used, reside with the bibliographic records in one database.

The sample application contains some bibliographic records that use authority files, and others that do not. The sample database, therefore, demonstrates both approaches to the handling of bibliographic information. In practice, you will most probably use one approach consistently. For example, you may choose to use only a computerized Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF), but not a computerized Serials Authority File (SAF), nor a computerized supplier authority file. If so, all bibliographic records containing corporate names would use the CNAF. All serials titles, ISSNs, and supplier information would be entered directly into the bibliographic records.

Example of how both approaches are used in the sample database

MFN 13 The corporate author (**field 111**) contains the institution's main body, place, and country code, entered in **subfields a, c, and d**:

^aFederación Panamericana de Asociaciones de Facultades
(Escuelas) de Medicina^cCaracas^dVE

MFN 17 The two corporate authors are entered using the authority codes **21** and **40**, entered in **subfield z**:

^z21%^z40

The display formats and FSTs used for inversion, sorting, and the exchange of data have been generalized to accept data directly from a bibliographic record or indirectly using an authority record, as the case may be. As well, these tables have been designed to work for both the participating centre and the coordinating centre when used in a network. As can be seen in the following list, records of different types are mixed throughout the database.

The MIBIS database contains the following 52 records:

MFN 1	Monograph from a collection (English-language version)
MFN 2	Corporate name authority record
MFN 3	Corporate name authority record
MFN 4	Corporate name authority record
MFN 5	Corporate name authority record
MFN 6	Corporate name authority record
MFN 7	Article from a periodical
MFN 8	Monograph
MFN 9	Monograph (conference proceedings)
MFN 10	Chapter from a monograph
MFN 11	Corporate name authority record
MFN 12	Corporate name authority record
MFN 13	Monograph
MFN 14	Supplier authority record
MFN 15	Monograph with translated title
MFN 16	Corporate name authority record
MFN 17	Collection with parallel title (conference proceedings)
MFN 18	Corporate name authority record
MFN 19	Corporate name authority record
MFN 20	Corporate name authority record
MFN 21	Corporate name authority record
MFN 22	Serials authority record
MFN 23	Corporate name authority record
MFN 24	Monograph from a collection (French-language version)
MFN 25	Monograph
MFN 26	Serials authority record
MFN 27	Chapter from a monograph
MFN 28	Collection
MFN 29	Chapter from a collection
MFN 30	Article from a periodical
MFN 31	Monograph with parallel title
MFN 32	Corporate name authority record
MFN 33	Corporate name authority record
MFN 34	Corporate name authority record
MFN 35	Serials authority record

MFN 36	Monograph in a monographic series
MFN 37	Monograph
MFN 38	Serials authority record
MFN 39	Corporate name authority record
MFN 40	Corporate name authority record
MFN 41	Monograph in a monographic series
MFN 42	Serials authority record
MFN 43	Corporate name authority record
MFN 44	Monograph (thesis)
MFN 45	Monograph (United Nations document)
MFN 46	Acquisitions record
MFN 47	Article from a periodical
MFN 48	Article from a periodical
MFN 49	Supplier authority record
MFN 50	Supplier authority record
MFN 51	Acquisitions record
MFN 52	Acquisitions record

IV DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION

1 Worksheets for bibliographic records

Four data entry worksheets have been defined for the entry or modification of bibliographic records. They are:

MIBIS	This is the default data entry worksheet. It is used to enter or modify a record describing a monograph or collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level M or C).
PARTM	This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a monograph or a collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level A, and bibliographic level of parent M or C).
PARTS	This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a serial (i.e., a record with bibliographic level A and bibliographic level of parent S).
ACQIS	This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify an acquisitions record, regardless of its bibliographic level.

The first three data entry worksheets each consist of seven screens. The structure of each worksheet is identical, but only those fields appropriate to the material being described are present. The fields are clearly identified with the field names and field tags used in the **Field-by-Field Guide**. Except for the most obvious fields, help information is also provided, which can be viewed by pressing the **[F1]** function key. Some fields are defined with default values that are always appropriate for the material being described. In particular, the Record type (field 999) is set to "B" in all of the above worksheets to indicate bibliographic records.

Note 1 If you are not part of a formal information network, you can remove the Record status (**field 003**) from the first screen page of each of the **MIBIS**, **PARTM**, and **PARTS** worksheets.

Note 2 If you are implementing a unilingual system, you can remove the Language of analysis (**field 020**) from each of the **MIBIS**, **PARTM**, and **PARTS** worksheets. If, however, you will also be exporting records to a multilingual system, you must also create an entry for the Language of analysis (**field 020**) in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS exchange facility (see **Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network**).

2 Worksheets for authority records

There are three data entry worksheets for the entry or modification of authority records. They are:

CORP used to enter or modify corporate name authority records.

SER used to enter or modify serials authority records.

SUPPL used to enter or modify supplier authority records.

These data entry worksheets all consist of a single screen, and all have the Record type (**field 999**) set to the appropriate code ("C", "S", or "X") by default.

Examples of how to use the data entry worksheets

Example 1

A monograph is ordered, received, and catalogued by your centre:

When ordering the item, use **ACQIS** to enter the basic bibliographic and acquisitions information for the monograph.

If you are using a computerized supplier authority file and an authority record for the supplier is not already present in the database, use **SUPPL** to enter a new record.

If applicable, use **CORP** to enter new corporate name authority records.

When the item is received, use **ACQIS** to update Processing status (**field 400**), Date received (**field 512**), and other information as appropriate.

Use **MIBIS** to complete the descriptive cataloguing and add the call number, descriptors, abstract, etc.

If you are using a computerized CNAF and authority records for the corporate names are not already present in the database, use **CORP** to enter new records.

Example 2

Your centre has a copy of a conference proceedings that has already been catalogued as a monograph. You now wish to add records describing individual papers of particular interest to your centre:

Use **PARTM** to enter a bibliographic record for each paper to be described.

If you are using a computerized CNAF and authority records for the corporate names are not already present in the database, use **CORP** to enter new records.

Use **MIBIS** to update the record for the conference proceedings (i.e., the parent record) to add the appropriate MFNs in Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**).

V DISPLAY FORMATS

The display formats provided on the diskette are in English. If your system uses another language, the literals in the display formats will need to be changed. Similarly, in a multilingual system, you may elect to either provide extra display formats in the other languages of your system, or to modify the supplied display formats to use multilingual literals.

1 Display formats for bibliographic records (MIBIS)

Three similar display formats are provided with MIBIS for the bibliographic records:

- **MIBIS** is the default format used for screen displays when searching or browsing the database. It is also used for all printed catalogues.
- **MIBISA** is identical to MIBIS, but also displays the abstract. It can be selected as an alternative to MIBIS when searching or browsing. This display format is not used in any of the printed outputs.
- **CAB** is used to produce the current awareness bulletin. It is similar to MIBISA, but does not display the Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), or Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**). Indentation of data is reduced to accommodate a two-column report.

The above three display formats are used with bibliographic records. When browsing sequentially through MIBIS, you will encounter pauses as the system skips over the authority records in the database.

2 Display formats for acquisitions records (MIBIS)

Four display formats are provided for acquisitions records. They are all used exclusively by program ORDER:

- **ORDER** is used to print purchase orders.
- **CLAIM** is used to print claims for overdue orders.
- **SUPPLR** is used to print the supplier name and address in purchase orders and claims for overdue orders.
- **SUPNAM** is used to determine when a new supplier is being referenced.

3 Display formats for authority records (MIBIS)

Authority records can be displayed using the following three display formats:

- **CORP** for CNAF records,
- **SERIAL** for SAF records, and

- **SUPPL** for supplier authority file records.

Only the appropriate authority records are displayed by the above three display formats. You will encounter pauses when browsing MIBIS while other types of records are skipped.

As well, a printed list of the supplier authority file can be produced. The predefined report SUPAF calls the display format by the same name, **SUPAF**.

4 Display format for data verification (MIBIS)

For proofreading purposes, all records in the database can be displayed using the format **TAGS**. The data are printed with the field tags, regardless of record type. The format is similar to the empty format provided by MICRO-ISIS for screen output. TAGS can be used to print data in proof format in a report.

5 Display formats supplied with other databases

Three other display formats are provided for use with the other three databases (MIBIS2, CORP, and SERIAL). They are only used with specific reports that require the data to be reformatted, using these databases, before the reports can be produced. The formats are:

- **MIBIS2**, which is used with the MIBIS2 database to produce the printed main bibliographic index (see example 6 in **Section XIII**);
- **CORP**, which is used with the CORP database to produce the printed list of the CNAF (see example 14); and
- **SERIAL**, which is used with the SERIAL database to produce the printed list of the SAF (see example 15).

6 CDS-PASCAL format exits

MICRO-ISIS supports the use of format exits written in CDS-PASCAL for use in display formats. These are user-written programs that facilitate custom formatting of data before it is displayed or printed. The sample implementation uses the following format exits:

- **BODY**, to provide punctuation for corporate names,
- **DEC**, to determine the number of decimal digits to print in the total price, when printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders,
- **LINE**, to remove the second of two adjacent periods, and
- **REF**, for use with renumbered records to eliminate references to other records that are not present in the renumbered database. Nonexistent references can occur when:
 - not all related records are selected for use with the main bibliographic index or the other index reports,
 - in a formal information network, not all related bibliographic records are sent to the coordinating centre.

More information is provided on references to related bibliographic records in Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), and Record

number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**) in **Section VI, Part 2 — Resequencing the database for the printed bibliographic indexes**, **Section VII — Exchanging data in a formal information network**, and **Section IX — Inversion**.

Note Refer to **Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL** if you expect that any occurrence of the following fields may sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

- 111** Corporate author(s)
- 112** Affiliation
- 113** Other associated institution(s)
- 211** Corporate author(s) — parent
- 901** Corporate body (CNAF records)

7 Changing the display formats to improve performance

A number of simplifications may be made to the display formats if you are not using all the features described in this manual (e.g., computerized authority files).

The changes described below will result in faster production of displays and reports. However, they are optional and need not be made. Without these changes, the displays and reports will simply take a bit longer to produce.

7.1 Systems not using a computerized CNAF

If you are not using a computerized CNAF, you can simplify the MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB display formats by removing any references to them. For example, in format MIBIS, Corporate author(s) (**field 111**) are handled with:

```
(if p(v111) then &body( '/ ', if p(v111^z) then ref(val(v111^z),  
v901) else v111 fi, '^ ')(3,3) fi)
```

This can be replaced with:

```
(if p(v111) then &body( '/ ', v111, '^ ')(3,3) fi)
```

Similar changes could be made to the handling of the Affiliation (**field 112**), Other associated institutions (**field 113**), and Corporate author(s) — parent (**field 211**) in MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB.

7.2 Systems not using a computerized SAF

If you are not using a computerized SAF, similar changes could be made to the handling of the Monographic series (**field 140**), Title of serial (**field 200**), and ISSN (**field 201**) in MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB.

7.3 Systems not using a computerized supplier authority file

Likewise, the handling of Supplier (**field 515**) can be simplified in ORDER, CLAIM, SUPPLR and SUPNAM, and in the sort worksheet SUPLS if you are not using a computerized supplier authority file.

7.4 Systems not participating in a formal information network

If you are not implementing the system as part of a network, you could simplify the handling of Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**) in formats MIBIS and MIBISA.

Replace:

```
"Parent record: "d010,if v010:'-' then f(l(v010),1,0) else v010 fi/,  
if p(v011) then &ref('See also record number(s) ',(if v011:'-' then  
f(l(v011),1,0),' , 'else v011|, | fi), '* for part(s).')(0,3)/fi,  
if p(v012) then &ref('For other language version(s) see record  
no(s): ', (if v012:'-' then f(l(v012),1,0), ' , ' else v012|, | fi),  
'*.'')(0,3)/fi
```

with:

```
"Parent record: "v010/,  
"See also record number(s) "v011(0,3)+|, | " for part(s)."/,  
"For other language version(s) see record no(s): " v012(0,3)+|, | "."/
```

VI REPORT GENERATION

A number of reports have been predefined (see **Section XIII: Sample printed outputs** which uses these reports with the sample database).

The following reports are provided:

printed catalogues, which are produced directly from the main sample database, MIBIS;

current awareness bulletin, also produced directly from MIBIS;

main bibliographic index, produced from the MIBIS2 database (MIBIS2 is a temporary database created using selected records from MIBIS, which are resequenced by Broad subject heading (**field 320**), and then renumbered);

other indexes that refer to the main bibliographic index, also produced from MIBIS2;

purchase orders and claims for overdue orders, produced from MIBIS;

printed lists of the CNAF and the SAF, produced from databases CORP and SERIAL respectively. These reports are derived from the authority records in MIBIS, but processed by CDS-PASCAL programs into records in temporary databases. This permits the interfiling of "See" references in the lists; and

printed list of the supplier authority file, produced directly from MIBIS.

All predefined reports send data to the printer (DOS filename PRN). If necessary, a report can be cancelled by pressing **[Ctrl-C]**.

Should you wish to change any of the predefined reports permanently, you will have to do the following:

- Using DOS, copy the print or sort worksheet to be modified from the directory of the database from which the report is produced (MIBIS, MIBIS2, CORP, or SERIAL) to the same directory in which you keep the MICRO-ISIS system worksheets (i.e., the directory containing AEYPRT.FMT and AEYSRT.FMT). Rename the worksheet at the same time so that the third character in the name is a "Y" (e.g., the title catalogue report, called TITLC, might be renamed from ATITLC.FMT to AEYTLC.FMT).
- Make the desired changes using the System utility services of MICRO-ISIS.
- Optionally, test the changed report, referring to it by its new name.
- Reverse the first operation, copying the changed menu from the directory containing the system worksheets to the appropriate database directory. Give the new copy the original name of the print or sort worksheet.
- Delete the copy you created in the first step.

A CDS-PASCAL program called **REPORT** is provided to produce the above reports except the three authority file lists. This program will ensure that the appropriate database is selected for the desired report. Similarly, CDS-PASCAL programs **CORP** and **SERIAL** can be used to produce the printed lists of the CNAF and the SAF. Finally, program **RENUMB** can be requested to resequence the records in MIBIS for use with the printed bibliographic indexes. The following sections provide more information on the reports and the programs that produce them.

1 Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin

1.1 Selecting the data to be printed

Because the sample database is small, the printed catalogues and the current awareness bulletin were both printed using all records that had a Processing status (**field 400**) of LIST or CAT. Normally, you would only select records with the processing status LIST for the current awareness bulletin.

The records to be printed are first selected using the Information retrieval services of MICRO-ISIS. Following is a sample search expression:

```
LIST/(400)
```

The selected records are then saved in a MICRO-ISIS save file called CAT for the printed catalogues, and CAB for the current awareness bulletin. The predefined reports use these save files. Files CAT.SAV and CAB.SAV are included on the diskette for the records selected for the sample outputs at the end of this annex (see examples 1 to 5).

1.2 Using program **REPORT** to print the reports

You may call the CDS-PASCAL program **REPORT** to produce the printed catalogues or the current awareness bulletin. Proceed as follows:

- select option **A** (Advanced programming services) from the main MICRO-ISIS menu,
- select **R** (run), then
- type the program name **REPORT** and press **[Enter]**.

The program is menu driven — select the report you wish to have printed, or enter **X** to exit from the program and return to the main MICRO-ISIS menu. If you request a specific report,

you will be asked for the search criterion to be used. You need not provide one, provided that you have already done a search, and saved the results under the name CAT or CAB, as appropriate. If you use the program, you need not concern yourself with which database to use. The program ensures that the MIBIS database is selected before displaying the main MICRO-ISIS menu.

1.3 Using Sorting and printing services to print the reports

As an alternative to using program REPORT, you can use any of the predefined reports directly by requesting them with option *S* (User print worksheet) of the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. This also makes it possible to provide one-time overrides to the report worksheets.

The worksheets used to produce the printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin are summarized in the following table:

	Print worksheet	Sort worksheet	Print format	Save file
Author catalogue	AUTHC	AUTHS	MIBIS	CAT
Title catalogue	TITLC	TITLS	MIBIS	CAT
Corporate author catalogue	CORPC	CORPS	MIBIS	CAT
Meeting catalogue	MEETC	MEETS	MIBIS	CAT
Current awareness bulletin	CAB	CABS	CAB	CAB

The following table defines the sort parameters used with the printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin:

Sort worksheet	First-level sort fields	Sort type	Second-level sort field
AUTHS	110^a	0 ³⁸	100
TITLS	100, 101	0	
CORPS	111	0	100
MEETS	114	0	100
CABS	320	0	100

All the catalogue reports print the highest level sort as a heading. Note that, in the title catalogue, the title is printed as a heading, and then is printed again at the start of the item description. This is required because a title catalogue contains entries under both Title (**field 100**) and Parallel title(s) (**field 101**).

Note Refer to **Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL** if you expect that any occurrence of either of the following fields will sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

- 111** Corporate author(s)
- 901** Corporate body (CNAF records)

³⁸ Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field.

2 Resequencing the data for printed bibliographic indexes

The bibliographic records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes must first be sorted by Broad subject heading (**field 320**) and within that by Title (**field 100**). They are then printed with new reference numbers assigned sequentially to them. MICRO-ISIS has no direct means of renumbering records after they have been sorted. To produce the desired printed bibliographic indexes, the records must be placed into a second database after they have been sorted. The MFN numbers of the records in this second database, called MIBIS2, are then used as the sequential numbers assigned to the material in the main bibliographic index, and referenced in the other printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11).

2.1 Using program RENUMB to resequence the data

A program, called **RENUMB**, has been provided that will perform the necessary selection, sorting, and transfer of records from MIBIS to MIBIS2. Using program RENUMB is the most convenient way to prepare the data for use with the printed bibliographic indexes.

The program asks two questions:

- First, what is the search criterion to identify the records in MIBIS to be resequenced for the main bibliographic index and other bibliographic indexes.
- Second, what is the number to be assigned to the first resequenced record — this becomes the first MFN number used in MIBIS2.

The program then performs all the steps required to build the resequenced database. When it is finished, it calls program REPORT, which allows you to select the reports you wish to have printed.

The diskette contains the database, MIBIS2, which is derived from MIBIS in this manner. The records included are those which meet the search criterion:

```
LIST/(400)
```

The sample records are renumbered starting with 5001.

2.2 Manually resequencing the data

As an alternative to using program RENUMB, you can perform the steps done by program RENUMB. They are:

- Using the MIBIS database, select the records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes.
- Save the selected records in a MICRO-ISIS save file called PRINT. The predefined report to sort the records uses this save file. A file PRINT.SAV is included on the diskette for the records selected for the sample printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11).
- Sort the data using the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. Select the predefined report worksheet **NUMBR** which requests the sort (using worksheet **NMBRS**) but does not print anything. MICRO-ISIS keeps the “hit” file from the sort.
- Export the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option **E** (Export CDS/ISIS file). Fill in the fields on the export menu as follows:

Save file name: leave empty
 Hit file (Y/N)?: Y
 Reformatting FST: RENUMB
 Renumber records from: leave empty

Reformatting FSTs are used by MICRO-ISIS to reformat the data when it is being exchanged between databases. The reformatting FST, **RENUMB**, copies only the fields needed to produce the printed bibliographic indexes, and performs all the necessary retrieval of information from authority file records. The original MFN is also kept, which is required to enable references to other MFNs in **fields 010, 011, and 012** to be renumbered later.

- On the main MICRO-ISIS menu, change the active database to MIBIS2.
- Import the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option **I** (Import external file). Fill in the fields on the import menu as follows:

First MFN to be assigned: provide the number to be assigned to the first record
 Load/Merge/Update: L
 Reformatting FST: leave empty

The parameters listed above will load the resequenced records into the MIBIS2 database, replacing any data loaded previously.

- Invert the complete database using the Inverted file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option **F** (Full inverted file generation). Only the original MFN is inverted, which is required to properly renumber the references to other records in **fields 010, 011, and 012**.

The MIBIS2 database can now be used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes.

3 Generating the printed bibliographic indexes

You can produce the main bibliographic index and other printed bibliographic indexes anytime after you have created the resequenced MIBIS2 database. As with the printed catalogues and the current awareness bulletin, you can request these using the supplied program REPORT. Alternatively, you can print any index directly, so long as you ensure that MIBIS2 is the active database. You can request any of the predefined reports by using option "S" (User print worksheet) of the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. This also makes it possible to provide one-time overrides to the report worksheets. The worksheets used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes available are summarized in the following table:

	Print worksheet	Sort worksheet	Print format
Main bibliographic index	MAINI	MAINS	MIBIS2
Author index	AUTHI	AUTHS	note 1
Title index	TITLI	TITLS	note 2
Corporate body index	CORPI	CORPS	note 1
Subject index	SUBJI	SUBJS	note 1
Geographic index	GEOGI	GEOGS	note 1

Notes regarding print formats

- 1 The format is specified directly in the print worksheet.
- 2 No format is used; only the sort headings are printed.

The following table defines the sort parameters used with the printed bibliographic indexes.

Sort worksheet	First-level sort fields	Sort type ³⁹	Second-level sort field
MAINS	320	0	100
AUTHS	110^a	0	100
TITLS	100, 101	0	
CORPS	111, 112, 113	0	100
SUBJS	300	2	100
GEOGS	302	2	100

Note Refer to **Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL** if you expect that any occurrence of the following fields will sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

- 111** Corporate author(s)
- 112** Affiliation
- 113** Other associated institution(s)
- 211** Corporate author(s) — parent
- 901** Corporate body (CNAF records)

4 Printing the Corporate Name Authority File

The production of a printed list of the CNAF (see example 14) requires some extra processing of the authority records. This is to enable the “See” references to be interfiled with the corporate names, while displaying the appropriate reference. This can only be done using CDS-PASCAL programs. Programs called **CORP** and **CORP2** have been provided that will:

- create a database called **CORP** using the CNAF records in MIBIS, and
- sort and list these records on your printer.

Program **CORP** will copy the CNAF from MIBIS into the **CORP** database. It then calls the second program, **CORP2**, which performs some modifications to this temporary database, and then produces the printed list. You only request program **CORP**. This program searches for corporate name authority records, and stores the results in a save file called **CNAF**. It assumes an old one exists, and replaces it (one is supplied on the diskette). If not, the program operation will terminate, and you will be shown the Information retrieval services menu. In that case, simply request program **CORP** a second time. The program also uses the reformatting **FST** called **CNAF** in the MIBIS directory to select the necessary information from the MIBIS database.

To produce the report, the program uses print worksheet **CNAF**, sort worksheet **CNAFS**, and display format **CORP**, all kept in the **CORP** directory.

³⁹ Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field and Sort type 2 sorts descriptors delimited by triangular brackets.

To produce the printed list of the CNAF, proceed as follows:

- select option **A** (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select **R** (run), and
- type the program name **CORP**, and press **[Enter]**.

5 Printing the Serials Authority File

The production of a printed list of the SAF (see example 15) requires some extra processing of the authority records. This is to enable the “See” references to be interfiled with the serial titles, while displaying the appropriate reference. This can only be done using CDS-PASCAL programs. Programs called **SERIAL** and **SER2** have been provided that will:

- create a database called **SERIAL** using the SAF records in MIBIS, and
- sort and list these records on your printer.

Program **SERIAL** will copy the SAF records from MIBIS into the **SERIAL** database. It then calls the second program, **SER2**, which performs some modifications to this temporary database, and then produces the printed list. You only request program **SERIAL**. This program searches for serials authority records, and stores the results in a save file called **SAF**. It assumes an old one exists, and replaces it (one is supplied on the diskette). If not, the program operation will terminate, and you will be shown the Information retrieval services menu. In that case, simply request program **SERIAL** a second time. The program also uses the reformatting **FST** called **SAF** in the MIBIS directory to select the necessary information from the MIBIS database.

To produce the report, the program uses print worksheet **SAF**, sort worksheet **SAFS**, and display format **SERIAL**, all kept in the **SERIAL** directory.

To produce the printed list of the SAF, proceed as follows:

- select option **A** (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select **R** (run), and
- type the program name **SERIAL**, and press **[Enter]**.

6 Printing the supplier authority file

The supplier authority file is the only authority file that can be printed directly from the MIBIS database (see example 16). The MIBIS directory on the diskette contains print worksheet **SUPAF**, sort worksheet **SUPS**, and display format **SUPAF** for the printed list. To produce the list of the supplier authority file, proceed as follows:

- select option **P** (Sorting and printing services) from the main menu,
- select **S** (User print worksheet),
- type the print worksheet name **SUPAF**, and press **[Enter]**, and
- if desired, modify any of the fields on the print or sort worksheets.

7 Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders

Two predefined reports are provided to print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders (see examples 12 and 13).

Before producing these, you should select the acquisitions records to be printed, using the Information retrieval services of MICRO-ISIS. Select records with Processing status (field 400) set to ORD:

```
ORD/(400)
```

For these reports, you need a second search criterion based on the Date ordered (field 510). This requires a free-text search. For example, for purchase orders (to avoid reprinting orders made earlier):

```
search set 1:  ORD/(400)
search set 2:  ? #1 V510 >= '1994-04-01'
```

for order claims (to avoid sending these to items just ordered):

```
search set 1:  ORD/(400)
search set 2:  ? #1 V510 < '1994-08-01'
```

Save the records found in a save file called **ORDER** for purchase orders, or **CLAIM** to produce the claims for overdue orders.

You can only print these reports using program REPORT. This program uses the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS to sort the information. It then requests a second program, ORDER, to print either the purchase orders or the claims for overdue books.

You will have to customize program ORDER to your centre's own needs. To do this, change all the lines in the program marked with "<--", as appropriate. Use any text editor or word processor to edit the file called ORDER.PAS (in directory ISISPAS on the diskette). These lines provide the name of your library that appears at the top of the printed form, the mailing address lines, and information about the size of the printed page. Should you have preprinted forms, you will need to modify this program to be compatible with your forms. Your institution's name and address should be supplied in place of "--- Your institution's name ---" and the information under "SHIP TO". If you need more lines for the mailing address than are provided, simply add more lines to the program, exactly as shown. If you need fewer lines, remove the extra lines from the program. Be sure to indicate in the appropriate line in the program exactly how many lines are used for the shipping address.

After having made the changes to the program, you must recompile it. From the main MICRO-ISIS menu:

- request option **A** for Advanced programming services,
- select option **C** for compile,
- type the program name **ORDER** and press **[Enter]**.

When the program has compiled, press **Q** for quit to return to the main MICRO-ISIS menu.

For simplicity, the MFN number has been used as the order number.

ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

The sample printed purchase orders and claims for overdue orders at the end of this annex (examples 12 and 13) were both produced using the search expression:

ORD/(400)

The worksheets, display formats, and save files required to produce these reports are:

	Print worksheet	Sort worksheet	Print format ⁴⁰	Save file
purchase orders	ORDER	SUPLS	ORDER	ORDER
claims	ORDER	SUPLS	CLAIM	CLAIM

The sort parameters used with these reports are:

Sort worksheet	First-level sort field	Sort type	Second-level sort field
SUPLS	515	0 ⁴¹	MFN

VII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

1 Preparing the reformatting FST

An FST, called **XCHANG**, is provided to enable participating centres (PCs) to exchange data with the coordinating centre (CC). It must be customized for use with a particular PC as follows.

1. The PC acronym must be entered as an unconditional literal for Participating centre acronym (**field 001**), and as part of the repeatable preliterate used with Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**).

Example

change the lines:

```
1 0 'acronym'
10 0 |ZZ-acronym-|v010
11 0 (|ZZ-acronym-|v011/)
12 0 (|ZZ-acronym-|v012/)
```

⁴⁰ Format ORDER is used by program ORDER to display the citation. Two other formats are also used by program ORDER: SUPPLR to display the supplier name and address, and SUPNAM to determine when a new supplier is selected.

⁴¹ Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field.

to:

```

1  0  'CODESRIA'
10 0  ( | ZZ-CODESRIA- | v010
11 0  ( | ZZ-CODESRIA- | v011/)
12 0  ( | ZZ-CODESRIA- | v012/)

```

where CODESRIA is the acronym of the PC.

The **ZZ-** is appended to the front of the data in **fields 010, 011, and 012** for the following reasons:

- **Fields 001 and 002** are inverted together, with a **ZZ-** appended to the front of the combined term. This allows all these references to be stored together at the end of the terms dictionary. In this way, they will not be retrieved when searching on the acronym (e.g., to retrieve the PC's records or to retrieve titles containing the acronym).
- When **fields 010, 011, and 012** are printed or displayed, a search will be performed automatically in the display format, using the full field contents. The **ZZ-** is therefore required for the search to succeed.

Example

The original records at the PC (CODESRIA) are:

1.	MFN:	1298
	field 011 contains:	1299
2.	MFN:	1299
	field 010 contains:	1298

At the CC, these records become:

1.	MFN:	2371
	field 001 contains:	CODESRIA
	field 002 contains:	1298
	field 011 contains:	ZZ-CODESRIA-1299
	fields 001 and 002 are inverted together, resulting in the posting:	
		ZZ-CODESRIA-1298
2.	MFN:	2372
	field 001 contains:	CODESRIA
	field 002 contains:	1299
	field 010 contains:	ZZ-CODESRIA-1298
	fields 001 and 002 are inverted together, resulting in the posting:	
		ZZ-CODESRIA-1299

Thus, when record 2371 is printed at the CC, the contents of **field 011**, ZZ-CODESRIA-1299, are used in a search, and the posting for record 2372 is located. Therefore, 2372 is printed as the record number of part.

2. When records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, the language code corresponding to the language of the system must be entered as an

unconditional literal. This language code will be assigned to the Language of analysis (field 020) in the records in the CC's consolidated database.

Example

```
20 0 'Fr'
```

2 Sending data to the coordinating centre

To send completed catalogue records to the CC, perform the following steps.

- Using the MIBIS database, select the records to be sent to the CC. These are the records with Record status (field 003) N.

Example

```
N/(003)
```

- Save the results in a save file called **XCHANG**.
- Export the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option *E* (Export CDS/ISIS file). Note the fields on the export menu that must be filled in as follows:

Save file name:	XCHANG
Hit file (Y/N)?:	N
Reformatting FST:	XCHANG
Renumber records from:	leave empty

The reformatting FST, **XCHANG**, copies only the fields to be sent to the CC, and performs all the necessary retrieval of information from authority file records.

Note Data has not been entered in the Record status (field 003) in the sample database.

VIII CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS

A program called **CHANGE** is provided that can be used to globally modify the contents of the two status fields: Record status (field 003), and Processing status (field 400).

After the current awareness bulletin or printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, the processing status should be changed from LIST to CAT. Similarly, after records have been sent to the CC for the network, the record status should be changed from N to S.

To change either of these fields, proceed as follows:

- select option *A* (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select *R* (run), and
- type the program name **CHANGE**, and press *[Enter]*.

You will be presented with a menu, from which you select which field you wish to change globally.

IX INVERSION

The inversion performed on the main database, MIBIS, by the supplied FST is straightforward except for the handling of data found in authority records and of fields referencing related bibliographic records.

1 Inverting fields containing references by MFN to authority records

When an authority record is used for Corporate author(s) (**field 111**), Affiliation (**field 112**), Other associated institution(s) (**field 114**), or Monographic series (**field 140**), the authority code (**subfield ^z**) is inverted, along with the information in the authority record. Therefore, one can search using either keywords or the authority code.

Example of a search on a corporate body

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

or use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

2 Inverting fields containing references to supplier authority records

The Supplier (**field 515**) is inverted in the bibliographic record and the supplier authority file record is referenced using an alphabetic code. Therefore, the authority file record must always be created before the bibliographic record is entered. Failure to do so will result in the supplier (**field 515**) not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record.

Note When a full database inversion is required, two full database inversions must be performed in succession. Failure to do so may result in the supplier (**field 515**) not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record.

One can search for a supplier using either keywords or the authority code.

Example of a search on a supplier

To retrieve all items on order from The Voluntary Health Association of India, use the search expression:

VOLUNTARY (F) HEALTH (F) ASSOCIATION (F) INDIA/(515) * ORD/(400)

or use the authority code of the supplier in the search expression:

VHAI/(515) * ORD/(400)

3 Inverting fields containing references to related bibliographic records

The second line of the inversion FST, MIBIS.FST, shows the contents of the Participating centre acronym (**field 001**) and the Participating centre record number (**field 002**) together, and assigns to the combined result the inversion identifier of 002. The FST entry is coded as:

```
2 0 "ZZ-"v001, "-"v002
```

This inversion is required by the coordinating centre (CC) in a network. When records are transferred from PCs to the CC, they are assigned new MFN numbers in the latter's database. Ordinarily, the contents of Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**) would no longer be applicable. However, the inversion of the combination of the original record's MFN with the PC's acronym allows MICRO-ISIS to locate the original records being referenced in **fields 010, 011, and 012**. When the contributed record is retrieved, MICRO-ISIS is able to use this information to substitute the MFN of the related record in the CC in the display or printed output. An example is shown in **Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network**.

Note The second line — 2 0 "ZZ-"v001, "-"v002 — can be removed if you are not the CC of a formal information network. It can, however, be safely kept in the FST.

When selected records are resequenced for the production of printed bibliographic indexes, the original MFN numbers in **fields 010, 011, and 012** no longer apply. To be able to correctly display resequenced record numbers, the original MFN of the record in MIBIS is kept with the resequenced MIBIS2 database. This MFN is inverted, so that the original record can be located, and the new record number then determined. This is the reason an inversion is required when creating the resequenced database.

By extension, if the CC produces printed bibliographic indexes of material contributed by PCs, the inversion techniques used on both MIBIS and MIBIS2 will ensure that the resequenced record numbers are used in all references to other records in the display format.

X LIMITATION OF CDS-PASCAL

CDS-PASCAL programs are provided to enhance the formatting of data, and to perform some of the tasks described in this annex.

One limitation of CDS-PASCAL may have an adverse effect on some of the functions performed by the programs provided. The limitation is that CDS-PASCAL cannot accept more than 255 characters of text passed to a format exit. This affects two of the format exits: **BODY** and **REF**.

When this limit is exceeded, results are unpredictable. In some cases, the extra text may be lost. In others, MICRO-ISIS can fail completely.

The diskette contains a directory called **SAFE** that contains alternative files that do not use the CDS-PASCAL format exits. These files can be used to ensure that MICRO-ISIS will not fail for these reasons. However, use of the alternative files may result in some inconsistency.

There are no records in the sample database that exceed the 255-character limit. If the length of any occurrence of the following fields is likely to exceed this limit, use the alternate files provided:

- 111** Corporate author(s)
- 112** Affiliation
- 113** Other associated institution(s)
- 211** Corporate author(s) — parent
- 901** Corporate body (CNAF records)

The alternate files in the SAFE directory are:

Use this file	to replace this file	in directory
MIBIS.PFT	MIBIS.PFT	MIBIS
MIBISA.PFT	MIBISA.PFT	MIBIS
CAB.PFT	CAB.PFT	MIBIS
ACORPS.FMT	ACORPS.FMT	MIBIS
MIBIS2.PFT	MIBIS2.PFT	MIBIS2
ACORS2.FMT	ACORPS.FMT	MIBIS2

Note The format exit called **REF** is used to remove nonexistent references, which appear as zeros, when displaying Record number of parent (**field 010**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field 011**), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field 012**). No alternate solution is possible, except to accept the zeros in the output. The replacement display formats do not use **REF** for **fields 011** or **012**.

XI HEURISKO

An implementation is provided on the diskettes for use with Heurisko.⁴² The implementation on the diskette consists of the following files:

- an alternative inversion FST, which inverts only the bibliographic fields, and adds prefixes to the index entries suitable for use with Heurisko's search facilities;
- file **MIBISFT.RSK**, which lists the available display formats;
- file **MIBISST.RSK**, which lists the searchable fields;
- file **MIBISH2.RSK**, which provides a dummy search help screen that you can modify;
- file **MIBISDT.RSK**, which provides the date extraction format;
- file **MIBISH1.RSK**, which provides a dummy description of the database that you can modify;
- file **EURSKF.PAS**, which links the MIBIS ISISPAS format exits to Heurisko; and
- file **NOMINA.RSK**, which links the MIBIS database to Heurisko.

To install MIBIS for use with Heurisko, you must do the following:

- Copy the file MIBIS.FST from the root directory of the diskette to the directory where you placed the MIBIS database. Refer to **Section II: Installation on your microcomputer**. Perform a full

⁴² Heurisko is a generalized user-friendly search and retrieval application for MICRO-ISIS developed by the Società per la Documentazione, le Biblioteche e gli Archivi - DBA, Florence, Italy. It is distributed with MICRO-ISIS outside Italy.

inversion (option *F* — Full inverted file generation — in Inverted file services of MICRO-ISIS) on the complete database.

- Copy file **MIBISH1.RSK** from the root directory of the diskette to the MICRO-ISIS message directory (as defined by parameter 3 of the SYSPAR.PAR file).
- Compile program **EURSKF.PAS**. First ensure that any any format exits that you may have added to the display formats are included in the list of format exits in the USES statement in this program. Then, in Advanced programming services of MICRO-ISIS, request Compile, and specify the program name, **EURSKF**.
- Add the database MIBIS to the list of databases known to Heurisko. If this is the first or only database used with Heurisko, you can do this by copying the file NOMINA.RSK from the root directory of the diskette to the MICRO-ISIS data directory (as defined by parameter 5 of the SYSPAR.PAR file). If this is not the first database, you should add it to the NOMINA.RSK file existing on your system. Use the setup facilities of Heurisko (by pressing **[Alt-S]** when in a Heurisko menu), and type **MIBIS** at the Database name prompt.
- If you wish, edit any of the tables associated with the MIBIS database using the definition facilities of Heurisko (by pressing **[Alt-S]** when in a Heurisko menu).

The following fields are inverted in the database, with the prefixes shown:

Field	Prefix	Inversion type
300	PD=	2
300, 301, 302, 303, 304	AD=	2
100, 101	TI=	4
110	PA=	0
111, 112, 113	CA=	4
114	ME=	4
123	DP=	0
140	MS=	4
142	PR=	4
161	DN=	0
320	BH=	0
410	LO=	0
420	TM=	0
007	BL=	0
008	LP=	0
021	LT=	0

XII COMPLETE LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE MICRO-ISIS IMPLEMENTATION

The files related to the MICRO-ISIS implementation are listed below.

1 Directory structure

MIBIS	Main database (MIBIS) and supporting files
MIBIS2	Resequenced database (MIBIS2) and supporting files
CORP	CORP database and supporting files used to produce the printed CNAF

SERIAL	SERIAL database and supporting files used to produce the printed SAF
ISISPAS	CDS-PASCAL programs and format exits
SAVE	Save files of retrieval requests
SAFE	Replacement display formats, sort FST, and report worksheets for MIBIS and MIBIS2
INMAGIC	Parallel implementation in INMAGIC Plus (see Annex 20)

2 Directory contents

2.1 Directory MIBIS

Database

MIBIS.FDT, MIBIS.FST, MIBIS.MST, MIBIS.XRF, MIBIS.CNT, MIBIS.N01, MIBIS.N02, MIBIS.L01, MIBIS.L02, MIBIS.IFP, MIBIS.ANY

Data entry worksheets

monograph/collection	AMIBIS.FMT, BMIBIS.FMT, CMIBIS.FMT, DMIBIS.FMT, EMIBIS.FMT, FMIBIS.FMT, GMIBIS.FMT
analytic from a serial	APARTS.FMT, BPARTS.FMT, CPARTS.FMT, DPARTS.FMT, EPARTS.FMT, FPARTS.FMT, GPARTS.FMT
analytic from a monograph/collection	APARTM.FMT, BPARTM.FMT, CPARTM.FMT, DPARTM.FMT, EPARTM.FMT, FPARTM.FMT, GPARTM.FMT
acquisitions	AACQIS.FMT, BACQIS.FMT, CACQIS.FMT, DACQIS.FMT
corporate authority	ACORP.FMT
serials authority	ASER.FMT
supplier authority	ASUPPL.FMT

Display formats

browsing, catalogues	MIBIS.PFT
browsing with abstract	MIBISA.PFT
current awareness bulletin	CAB.PFT
purchase order	ORDER.PFT
claims	CLAIM.PFT
proof	TAGS.PFT
corporate names	CORP.PFT
serials	SERIAL.PFT
suppliers	SUPPL.PFT

ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

Report worksheets

author catalogue	report	AAUTHC.FMT
	sort	AAUTHS.FMT
title catalogue	report	ATITLC.FMT
	sort	ATITLS.FMT
corporate author catalogue	report	ACORPC.FMT
	sort	ACORPS.FMT
meeting catalogue	report	AMEETC.FMT
	sort	AMEETS.FMT
current awareness bulletin	report	ACAB.FMT
	sort	ACABS.FMT

Specialized report worksheets, etc.

purchase order/claim	(dummy report)	AORDER.FMT
	(dummy report)	ACLAIM.FMT
	(dummy sort)	ASUPLS.FMT
	(format)	SUPPLR.PFT
	(format)	SUPNAM.PFT
resequence	(dummy report)	ANUMBR.FMT
	(dummy sort)	ANMBRS.FMT
	(reformatting)	RENUMB.FST
supplier authority file	report	ASUPAF.FMT
	sort	ASUPS.FMT
(used with ASUPAF.FMT)		SUPAF.PFT
CNAF (to create the list)		CNAF.FST
SAF (to create the list)		SAF.FST
stopwords		MIBIS.STW
exchange records in a network		XCHANG.FST

Heurisko files

MIBIS definitions	MIBISST.RSK, MIBISFT.RSK, MIBISDT.RSK, MIBISH2.RSK
-------------------	---

2.2 Directory MIBIS2

Database

MIBIS2.FDT, MIBIS2.FST, MIBIS2.MST, MIBIS2.XRF, MIBIS2.CNT,
MIBIS2.N01, MIBIS2.N02, MIBIS2.L01, MIBIS2.L02, MIBIS2.IFP,
MIBIS2.ANY, AMIBIS.FMT

Display format

printed bibliographic indexes	MIBIS2.PFT
-------------------------------	------------

Report worksheets

main bibliographic index	report	AMAINI.FMT
	sort	AMAINS.FMT
author index	report	AAUTHI.FMT
	sort	AAUTHS.FMT
title index	report	ATITLI.FMT
	sort	ATITLS.FMT
corporate body index	report	ACORPI.FMT
	sort	ACORPS.FMT
subject index	report	ASUBJI.FMT
	sort	ASUBJS.FMT
geographic index	report	AGEOGI.FMT
	sort	AGEOGS.FMT

2.3 Directory CORP
Database

CORP.FDT, CORP.FST, CORP.MST, CORP.XRF, CORP.CNT, CORP.N01,
CORP.N02, CORP.L01, CORP.L02, CORP.IFP, CORP.ANY, ACORP.FMT

Display format

CNAF CORP.PFT

Report

CNAF	report	ACNAF.FMT
	sort	ACNAFS.FMT

2.4 Directory SERIAL
Database

SERIAL.FDT, SERIAL.FST, SERIAL.MST, SERIAL.XRF, SERIAL.CNT,
SERIAL.N01, SERIAL.N02, SERIAL.L01, SERIAL.L02, SERIAL.IFP,
SERIAL.ANY, ASERIA.FMT

Display format

SAF SERIAL.PFT

Report

SAF	report	ASAF.FMT
	sort	ASAFS.FMT

2.5 Directory ISISPAS
Programs

resequence database	RENUMB.PAS, RENUMB.PCD
request printed outputs	REPORT.PAS, REPORT.PCD
print orders and claims	ORDER.PAS, ORDER.PCD

produce printed CNAF	CORP.PAS, CORP.PCD CORP2.PAS, CORP2.PCD
produce printed SAF	SERIAL.PAS, SERIAL.PCD SER2.PAS, SER2.PCD
change status fields	CHANGE.PAS, CHANGE.PCD
format exit list for Heurisko	EURSKF.PAS

Format exits

format corporate names	BODY.PAS, BODY.PCD
determine the number of decimal digits in price	DEC.PAS, DEC.PCD
correct punctuation	LINE.PAS, LINE.PCD
format MFN references	REF.PAS, REF.PCD

2.6 Directory SAVE

save file — catalogues	CAT.SAV
save file — current awareness bulletin	CAB.SAV
save file — resequence	PRINT.SAV
save file — purchase order	ORDER.SAV
save file — claims	CLAIM.SAV
save file to produce CNAF	CNAF.SAV
save file to produce SAF	SAF.SAV
save file to exchange data	XCHANG.SAV

2.7 Directory SAFE

Replacements for files in directory MIBIS

MIBIS.PFT	MIBISA.PFT
CAB.PFT	ACORPS.FMT

Replacement for file in directory MIBIS2

MIBIS2.PFT

2.8 Root directory

Heurisko files

MIBISH1.RSK, NOMINA.RSK

Miscellaneous files

Inversion FST for use with Heurisko	MIBIS.FST
Last minute implementation notes	READ.ME

XIII SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

The following examples are in the format of the actual printout from MICRO-ISIS. In principle, the only changes are the addition of a header on each page and changing the page number to correspond to the sequence in this manual.

- Example 1. Author catalogue
- Example 2. Title catalogue
- Example 3. Corporate author catalogue
- Example 4. Meeting catalogue
- Example 5. Current awareness bulletin
- Example 6. Main bibliographic index
- Example 7. Author index
- Example 8. Title index
- Example 9. Corporate body index
- Example 10. Subject index
- Example 11. Geographic index
- Example 12. Purchase orders
- Example 13. Claims for overdue orders
- Example 14. Corporate Name Authority File
- Example 15. Serials Authority File
- Example 16. Supplier authority file

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

AIYEPEKU, W.O.

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepku, W.O. (University of Ibadan. Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.
ISBN: 0-88936-366-8
Document number: IDRC-TS43e
Project: 3-A-80-4079.
Also published in French and Spanish.
Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS
Record no. 8 Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY Copies: 2

CHIMEDZA, R.

Savings clubs : the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe / Chimedza, R. (University of Zimbabwe. Department of Land Management, Harare ZW)
In: Rural development and women : lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed., v. 1, p. 161-174.
Geneva : ILO, 1985.
ISBN: 92-2-105152-8
Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES; SAVINGS; WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION - CASE STUDIES; ZIMBABWE
Parent record: 28
Record no. 29 Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

CROWLEY, D.

Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign / Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn : Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media Dept., 1981. 186 p. : ill.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING; BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

ETHERINGTON, A.

Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign /
Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn : Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media
Dept., 1981. 186 p. : ill.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION;
NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

GASSOL DE HOROWITZ, ROSARIO

Graduate education for librarianship in Venezuela : a
theoretical framework / Gassol de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California, Berkeley, CA US (Degree granting
inst.)
Ann Arbor, MI : University Microfilms International, 1984.
212 p. : bibliog. p. 195-212
Dissertation, D.L.S.
Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE; HIGHER EDUCATION; GRADUATES -
EDUCATIONAL NEEDS; COMMUNICATION; INFORMATION
SYSTEMS; INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE; VENEZUELA
Record no. 44 Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS Copies: 1

JACSO, PETER

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software
from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor
(Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342),
v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS;
INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

JELLIFFE, D.B.

Child health in the tropics : a practical handbook for health
personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed. (University of California,
Los Angeles, CA US)
5th ed. - London : Edward Arnold, 1985. 290 p. : ill.
ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6
Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD HEALTH; CHILD DEVELOPMENT;
INFANTS - NUTRITION; DISEASES; HEALTH EDUCATION;
IMMUNIZATION; HEALTH SERVICES; HEALTH POLICY;
DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; TROPICAL ZONE
Record no. 37 Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

KIDD, R.

Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign /
Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn : Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media
Dept., 1981. 186 p. : ill.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION;
NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

MAGLACAS, A.M.

The potential of the traditional birth attendant / Maglacas,
A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO. Division of Health Manpower
Development, Geneva CH)
Geneva : WHO, 1986. 105 p.
(WHO offset publication ; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5
Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL
CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION
Record no. 36 Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95 Copies: 1

MAL, B.C.

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra,
A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of
Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN
0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER;
APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS
Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1

MALIYADDE, CHANDRASENA

Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena
In: Progress, v. 2, no. 4, Dec 1982, p. 34-38.
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL POPULATION - INVESTMENTS; SRI LANKA
Record no. 48 Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL Copies: 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

MISHRA, A.P.

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS
Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1

MORIN-LABATUT, GISELE

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement, v. 1
Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

MUNTEMBA, S.

Rural development and women : lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
Geneva : ILO, 1985. 2 v.
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4

Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT;
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT;
WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT
EVALUATION

See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).

Record no. 28 Location: MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

N'SANGOU, A.

La contribution des buy'em sell'em au développement [The contribution of the "buy'em sell'em" to development] / N'Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
In: Femmes du Cameroun : mères pacifiques, femmes rebelles / Barbier, J.C., ed., p. 385-392.
Bondy : Orstom, 1985.
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8

Descriptors: PURCHASING; MARKETING; WOMEN'S ROLE - FOOD;
CAMEROON

Record no. 27 Location: MAIN 396 BAR Copies: 1

PERERA, K.P.G.M.

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.

In: Progress, v. 2, no. 3, Sep 1982, p. 14-17.

Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION -
RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA

Record no. 47 Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER Copies: 1

ROSE, TORE

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)

Paris : OECD, 1985. 335 p.

ISBN: 92-64-12749-6

Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF
SAHARA

See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).

Record no. 9 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

SIMONS, J.

The potential of the traditional birth attendant / Maglacas,
A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO. Division of Health Manpower
Development, Geneva CH)
Geneva : WHO, 1986. 105 p.
(WHO offset publication ; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5

Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL
CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION

Record no. 36 Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95 Copies: 1

SLY, MAUREEN

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International
Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division,
Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA,
3-7 Nov 1981

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981

In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v.
1

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-354-4

Document number: IDRC-TS40e

Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS -
DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS;
METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les
systèmes d'information relatifs au développement /
Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de
l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa,
ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981

In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

relatifs au développement, v. 1
Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -
DEVSI; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE
CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

SZUCS, ANDRAS

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software
from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor
(Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342),
v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS;
INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

VARGA, SANDOR

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software
from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor
(Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342),
v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS;
INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

WEEKES-VAGLIANI, WINIFRED

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
(OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
In: Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.,
p. 104-110.
Paris : OECD, 1985.
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT
PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI
Parent record: 9
Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

TITLE CATALOGUE

AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT : PAPERS PRESENTED AT THE
WORKSHOP ON AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT, 26-30
SEPTEMBER 1983, PORT OF SPAIN, TRINIDAD

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented
at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and
Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad /
ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of
Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port
of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management,
Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983

International Service for National Agricultural Research,
The Hague NL (Funder)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA
(Funder)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing
Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)

Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.

Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126

Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH
PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL
COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA;
COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR
CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

CASE STUDIES IN POPULATION POLICY : NIGERIA

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria / UN. Population
Division, New York, NY US

New York, NY : UN, 1988. 38 p.

(Population policy paper ; no. 16)

Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83

Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY; DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION
CENSUSES; STATISTICAL TABLES; NIGERIA

Record no. 41 Location: MAIN 312(669) UN Copies: 1

CHILD HEALTH IN THE TROPICS : A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK FOR HEALTH
PERSONNEL

Child health in the tropics : a practical handbook for health
personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed. (University of California,
Los Angeles, CA US)

5th ed. - London : Edward Arnold, 1985. 290 p. : ill.

ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6

Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD HEALTH; CHILD DEVELOPMENT;
INFANTS - NUTRITION; DISEASES; HEALTH EDUCATION;

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

IMMUNIZATION; HEALTH SERVICES; HEALTH POLICY;
DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; TROPICAL ZONE
Record no. 37 Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL Copies: 1

LA CONTRIBUTION DES BUY'EM SELL'EM AU DEVELOPPEMENT

La contribution des buy'em sell'em au développement [The
contribution of the "buy'em sell'em" to development] /
N'Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
In: Femmes du Cameroun : mères pacifiques, femmes rebelles /
Barbier, J.C., ed., p. 385-392.
Bondy : Orstom, 1985.
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8
Descriptors: PURCHASING; MARKETING; WOMEN'S ROLE - FOOD;
CAMEROON
Record no. 27 Location: MAIN 396 BAR Copies: 1

CRISIS AND RECOVERY IN SUBSAHARAN AFRICA

Crisis and recovery in Sub-Saharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Sub-Saharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies,
Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches
sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR
(Sponsor)
Paris : OECD, 1985. 335 p.
ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL
ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF
SAHARA
See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).
Record no. 9 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

**DIRECTORIO DE LAS FACULTADES Y ESCUELAS DE MEDICINA DEL CONTINENTE :
NORTE, CENTRO Y SUR**

Directorio de las facultades y escuelas de medicina del
continente : norte, centro y sur / Federación Panamericana de
Asociaciones de Facultades (Escuelas) de Medicina, Caracas VE
Caracas : Fondo Editorial FEPAFEM, Nov 1986. 303 p.
ISBN: 980-265-585-6
Descriptors: DIRECTORIOS; ENSEÑANZA DE LA MEDICINA;
UNIVERSIDADES; AMERICA LATINA
Record no. 13 Location: REF 058(8)378.6 FED Copies: 1

TITLE CATALOGUE

DISTRICT INTEGRATED RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera,
K.P.G.M.
In: Progress, v. 2, no. 3, Sep 1982, p. 14-17.
Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION -
RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA
Record no. 47 Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER Copies: 1

FINAL REPORT : TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE IN PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT TO THE
GOVERNMENT OF BHUTAN

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan / Public Administration Service,
McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)
McLean, VA : Public Administration Service, Jun 1988. 43 p.
Project: Assistance to Royal Civil Service Commission,
BHU-85-006.
Availability: Restr. UNDP, United Nations Plaza, New York, NY
10017, USA.
Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT; TRAINING PROGRAMMES;
MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT - MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES;
MANPOWER PLANNING; CIVIL SERVICE; TEACHING METHODS;
TECHNICAL COOPERATION; PROJECT REPORTS; RESTRICTED
DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN
Record no. 45 Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB Copies: 1

GRADUATE EDUCATION FOR LIBRARIANSHIP IN VENEZUELA : A THEORETICAL
FRAMEWORK

Graduate education for librarianship in Venezuela : a
theoretical framework / Gassol de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California, Berkeley, CA US (Degree granting
inst.)
Ann Arbor, MI : University Microfilms International, 1984.
212 p. : bibliog. p. 195-212
Dissertation, D.L.S.
Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE; HIGHER EDUCATION; GRADUATES -
EDUCATIONAL NEEDS; COMMUNICATION; INFORMATION
SYSTEMS; INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE; VENEZUELA
Record no. 44 Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

A GUIDE TO WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS AND AGENCIES SERVING WOMEN IN KENYA

A guide to women's organizations and agencies serving women in Kenya [Un guide d'organisations et d'agences du Kenya au service des femmes] / Mazingira Institute, Nairobi KE
Nairobi : Mazingira Institute, 1985. 311 p. : ill.

Version mise à jour et augmentée de Directory of women's organizations in Kenya.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; ORGANISATIONS FEMININES; KENYA

Record no. 15 Location: REF 058(676.2)396:061 MAZ Copies: 1

INTERNATIONAL SOCIOECONOMIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS : AN EVALUATIVE STUDY OF DEVSIS-TYPE PROGRAMS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepku, W.O. (University of Ibadan. Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA
(Funder)

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.

ISBN: 0-88936-366-8

Document number: IDRC-TS43e

Project: 3-A-80-4079.

Also published in French and Spanish.

Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS

Record no. 8 Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY Copies: 2

LOW-COST TUBEWELLS FOR DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)

In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.

Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS

Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1

TITLE CATALOGUE

MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION
SYSTEMS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International
Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division,
Ottawa, ON CA
 Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA,
 3-7 Nov 1981
 Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont
 Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v.
 1
 Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.
 ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
 Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS -
 DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS;
 METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

MANUEL DE TRAITEMENT DES DONNEES BIBLIOGRAPHIQUES DANS LES SYSTEMES
D'INFORMATION RELATIFS AU DEVELOPPEMENT

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les
systèmes d'information relatifs au développement /
Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de
l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA
 Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa,
 ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
 Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont
 Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information
 relatifs au développement, v. 1
 Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.
 ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
 Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -
 DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE
 CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

MASS MEDIA MANUAL : HOW TO RUN A RADIO LEARNING GROUP CAMPAIGN

Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign /
Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn : Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media
Dept., 1981. 186 p. : ill.

Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION;
NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA

Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

**MICRO-CDS/ISIS : A BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE FROM
UNESCO**

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software
from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor
(Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342),
v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.

Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS;
INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES

Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

THE POTENTIAL OF THE TRADITIONAL BIRTH ATTENDANT

The potential of the traditional birth attendant / Maglacas,
A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO. Division of Health Manpower
Development, Geneva CH)
Geneva : WHO, 1986. 105 p.
(WHO offset publication ; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5

Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL
CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION

Record no. 36 Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95 Copies: 1

TITLE CATALOGUE

REGISTER : DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH PROJECTS IN ARAB COUNTRIES

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN

Paris : OCDE, 1988. 355 p.

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6

Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

REPertoire : PROJETS DE RECHERCHE EN MATIERE DE DEVELOPPEMENT DANS LES PAYS ARABES

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN

Paris : OCDE, 1988. 355 p.

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6

Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND WOMEN : LESSONS FROM THE FIELD

Rural development and women : lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH

Geneva : ILO, 1985. 2 v.

ISBN: 92-2-105154-4

Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT; AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT; WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT EVALUATION

See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).

Record no. 28 Location: MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

RURAL HOUSING PROBLEMS

Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena
In: Progress, v. 2, no. 4, Dec 1982, p. 34-38.
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL POPULATION - INVESTMENTS; SRI LANKA
Record no. 48 Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL Copies: 1

SAVINGS CLUBS : THE MOBILISATION OF RURAL FINANCES IN ZIMBABWE

Savings clubs : the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe /
Chimedza, R. (University of Zimbabwe. Department of Land
Management, Harare ZW)
In: Rural development and women : lessons from the field /
Muntemba, S., ed., v. 1, p. 161-174.
Geneva : ILO, 1985.
ISBN: 92-2-105152-8
Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES; SAVINGS; WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION
- CASE STUDIES; ZIMBABWE
Parent record: 28
Record no. 29 Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

WOMEN, FOOD AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
(OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
In: Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.,
p. 104-110.
Paris : OECD, 1985.
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT
PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI
Parent record: 9
Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

ASSOCIATION DES INSTITUTS ET CENTRES ARABES DE RECHERCHE POUR LE
DEVELOPPEMENT ECONOMIQUE ET SOCIAL, TUNIS TN

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement
dans les pays arabes = Register : development research
projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement,
Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de
Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis
TN

Paris : OCDE, 1988. 355 p.

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6

Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE
DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS
ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

CARIBBEAN COUNCIL FOR SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY, PORT OF SPAIN TT

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented
at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and
Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad /
ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of
Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port
of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management,
Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983

International Service for National Agricultural Research,
The Hague NL (Funder)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA
(Funder)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing
Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)

Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.

Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126

Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH
PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL
COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA;
COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR
CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

CENTRE DE RECHERCHES POUR LE DEVELOPPEMENT INTERNATIONAL. DIVISION
DES SCIENCES DE L'INFORMATION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les
systèmes d'information relatifs au développement /
Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de
l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 3

CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa,
ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information
relatifs au développement, v. 1
Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -
DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE
CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

ECLAC. SUBREGIONAL HEADQUARTERS FOR THE CARIBBEAN, PORT OF SPAIN TT

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented
at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and
Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad /
ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of
Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port
of Spain TT
Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management,
Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
International Service for National Agricultural Research,
The Hague NL (Funder)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA
(Funder)
Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing
Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)
Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH
PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL
COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA;
COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR
CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA
Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

**FEDERACION PANAMERICANA DE ASOCIACIONES DE FACULTADES (ESCUELAS) DE
MEDICINA, CARACAS VE**

Directorio de las facultades y escuelas de medicina del
continente : norte, centro y sur / Federación Panamericana de
Asociaciones de Facultades (Escuelas) de Medicina, Caracas VE
Caracas : Fondo Editorial FEPAFEM, Nov 1986. 303 p.
ISBN: 980-265-585-6
Descriptors: DIRECTORIOS; ENSEÑANZA DE LA MEDICINA;

UNIVERSIDADES; AMERICA LATINA

Record no. 13 Location: REF 058(8)378.6 FED Copies: 1

ILO, GENEVA CH

Rural development and women : lessons from the field / Muntemba,
S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
Geneva : ILO, 1985. 2 v.
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4

Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT;
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT;
WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT
EVALUATION

See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).

Record no. 28 Location: MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE. INFORMATION SCIENCES
DIVISION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International
Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division,
Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA,
3-7 Nov 1981

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981

In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v.
1

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-354-4

Document number: IDRC-TS40e

Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS -
DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS;
METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

MAZINGIRA INSTITUTE, NAIROBI KE

A guide to women's organizations and agencies serving women in
Kenya [Un guide d'organisations et d'agences du Kenya au
service des femmes] / Mazingira Institute, Nairobi KE
Nairobi : Mazingira Institute, 1985. 311 p. : ill.

Version mise à jour et augmentée de Directory of women's
organizations in Kenya.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; ORGANISATIONS FEMININES; KENYA

Record no. 15 Location: REF 058(676.2)396:061 MAZ Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 3

CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

OCDE. CENTRE DE DEVELOPPEMENT, PARIS FR

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN

Paris : OCDE, 1988. 355 p.

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6

Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.

Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION SERVICE, MCLEAN, VA US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan / Public Administration Service, McLean, VA US

UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)

McLean, VA : Public Administration Service, Jun 1988. 43 p.
Project: Assistance to Royal Civil Service Commission, BHU-85-006.

Availability: Restr. UNDP, United Nations Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA.

Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT; TRAINING PROGRAMMES; MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT - MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER PLANNING; CIVIL SERVICE; TEACHING METHODS; TECHNICAL COOPERATION; PROJECT REPORTS; RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN

Record no. 45 Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB Copies: 1

UN. POPULATION DIVISION, NEW YORK, NY US

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US

New York, NY : UN, 1988. 38 p.

(Population policy paper ; no. 16)

Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83

Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY; DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION CENSUSES; STATISTICAL TABLES; NIGERIA

Record no. 41 Location: MAIN 312(669) UN Copies: 1

CONFERENCE ON REHABILITATION AND RECOVERY IN SUBSAHARAN AFRICA,
PARIS, FR, 14-16 NOV 1984

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies,
Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches
sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR
(Sponsor)

Paris : OECD, 1985. 335 p.

ISBN: 92-64-12749-6

Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL
ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF
SAHARA

See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).

Record no. 9 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
(OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)

Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984

In: Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.,
p. 104-110.

Paris : OECD, 1985.

Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT
PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI

Parent record: 9

Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

REUNION TECHNIQUE SUR LES METHODOLOGIES COMMUNES, MONT SAINTE-MARIE,
PQ, CA, 9-13 NOV 1981

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les
systèmes d'information relatifs au développement /
Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de
l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa,
ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981

In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information
relatifs au développement, v. 1

Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-490-7

Document number: IDRC-TS40f

Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.

Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 4

MEETING CATALOGUE

DEV SIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE
CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.

Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

REUNION TECHNIQUE SUR LES METHODOLOGIES COMMUNES, OTTAWA, ON, CA, 3-7
NOV 1981

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les
systèmes d'information relatifs au développement /
Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches
pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de
l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa,
ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981

In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information
relatifs au développement, v. 1

Ottawa, ON : CRDI, 1988. 297 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-490-7

Document number: IDRC-TS40f

Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.

Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -
DEV SIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE
CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.

Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

TECHNICAL MEETING ON COMMON METHODOLOGIES, MONT SAINTE-MARIE, PQ, CA,
9-13 NOV 1981

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International
Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division,
Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA,
3-7 Nov 1981

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981

In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v.
1

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-354-4

Document number: IDRC-TS40e

Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS -
DEV SIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS;
METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

TECHNICAL MEETING ON COMMON METHODOLOGIES, OTTAWA, ON, CA, 3-7 NOV 1981

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov 1981

In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.

ISBN: 0-88936-354-4

Document number: IDRC-TS40e

Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS

For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

WORKSHOP ON AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT, PORT OF SPAIN, TT, 26-30 SEP 1983

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983

International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)

Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.

Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126

Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 5

CURRENT AWARENESS BULLETIN

AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC.
 Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT
 Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
 International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)
 International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
 Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
 Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)
 Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
 Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
 Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA
 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL
 Record no. 17 Copies: 1

COMPUTER SOFTWARE

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor (Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
 In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342), v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
 Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS; INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC
 Record no. 7 Copies: 1

DEVELOPMENT - GENERAL

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.
 Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
 OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
 University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)
 Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)
 Paris : OECD, 1985. 335 p.
 ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
 Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA
 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS
 Record no. 9 Copies: 1

EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Graduate education for
librarianship in Venezuela : a
theoretical framework / Gassol
de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California,
Berkeley, CA US (Degree
granting inst.)
Ann Arbor, MI : University
Microfilms International,
1984. 212 p. : bibliog. p.
195-212

Dissertation, D.L.S.

Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE;
HIGHER EDUCATION;
GRADUATES -
EDUCATIONAL NEEDS;
COMMUNICATION;
INFORMATION SYSTEMS;
INFORMATION
TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE;
VENEZUELA

Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS
Record no. 44 Copies: 1

Mass media manual : how to run a
radio learning group campaign /
Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.;
Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn :
Friedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass
Media Dept., 1981. 186 p. :
ill.

Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL
RADIO; ADULT
EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL
EDUCATION - NATIONAL
LEVEL; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES;
ADMINISTRATIVE
ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA

Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981
Record no. 25 Copies: 2

The potential of the traditional
birth attendant / Maglacas,
A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO.
Division of Health Manpower
Development, Geneva CH)
Geneva : WHO, 1986. 105 p.
(WHO offset publication ; no.
95)

ISBN: 92-4-170095-5

Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING
PROGRAMMES -
TRADITIONAL CULTURE;
FAMILY PLANNING;
LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION

Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95
Record no. 36 Copies: 1

FINANCE

Savings clubs : the mobilisation
of rural finances in Zimbabwe /
Chimedza, R. (University of
Zimbabwe. Department of Land
Management, Harare ZW)
In: Rural development and women :
lessons from the field /
Muntemba, S., ed., v. 1, p.
161-174.

Geneva : ILO, 1985.

ISBN: 92-2-105152-8

Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES;
SAVINGS; WOMEN'S
PARTICIPATION - CASE
STUDIES; ZIMBABWE

Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN
Record no. 29 Copies: 1

HEALTH

Child health in the tropics : a
practical handbook for health
personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed.
(University of California, Los
Angeles, CA US)

5th ed. - London : Edward

Arnold, 1985. 290 p. : ill.

ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6

Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD
HEALTH; CHILD

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 5

CURRENT AWARENESS BULLETIN

DEVELOPMENT; INFANTS
- NUTRITION;
DISEASES; HEALTH
EDUCATION;
IMMUNIZATION; HEALTH
SERVICES; HEALTH
POLICY; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES; TROPICAL
ZONE

Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL
Record no. 37 Copies: 1

HOUSING

Rural housing problems /
Maliyadde, Chandrasena
In: Progress, v. 2, no. 4, Dec
1982, p. 34-38.
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL
POPULATION -
INVESTMENTS; SRI
LANKA

Examines the nature of housing
problems among the rural
population in Sri Lanka. Includes
information about the investment
in housing and makes suggestions
for improvement.

Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL
Record no. 48 Copies: 1

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

International socioeconomic
information systems : an
evaluative study of DEVSIS-type
programs / Aiyepoku, W.O.
(University of Ibadan.
Department of Library Studies,
Ibadan NG)
International Development
Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA
(Funder)
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p.
: 70 ref.
ISBN: 0-88936-366-8
Document number: IDRC-TS43e
Project: 3-A-80-4079.

Also published in French and
Spanish.

Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS;
ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS;
IDRC - CARISPLAN;
DIS; INFOPLAN; UN;
EVALUATION;
RECOMMENDATIONS;
LATIN AMERICA;
CARIBBEAN; AFRICA;
PADIS

Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY
Record no. 8 Copies: 2

Manual for the preparation of
records in
development-information systems
/ Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly,
Maureen / International
Development Research Centre.
Information Sciences Division,
Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common
Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA,
3-7 Nov 1981

Technical Meeting on Common
Methodologies, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov
1981

In: Recommended methods for
development-information
systems, v. 1

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4

Document number: IDRC-TS40e

Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING;
INFORMATION ANALYSIS
- DEVSIS; INDEXING;
CONTENT ANALYSIS;
AGRIS; METHODOLOGY;
ISIS; MINISIS

This publication contains
guidelines for the record
structure and content of
bibliographic records in
development-information systems.
It is intended to be a guide for
the designers of new systems and
for those seeking to improve
existing systems. The manual is
the result of 5-6 years experience

with a variety of regional and national DEVSIS (Development Sciences Information System) systems and can be considered to be an update of the technical recommendations of the DEVSIS Study Team in 1975. The major part of the manual contains field-by-field guidelines to be used by a documentalist when creating records in a development-information system. Numerous annexes are appended, including a data-definition table, sample completed worksheets, a correspondence for UNISIST and AGRIS field tags, guidelines for implementation under MINISIS, CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary, and a bibliography.

Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR
Record no. 1 Copies: 2

LABOUR

Rural development and women :
lessons from the field /
Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva
CH

Geneva : ILO, 1985. 2 v.

ISBN: 92-2-105154-4

Descriptors: WOMEN'S
PARTICIPATION; RURAL
EMPLOYMENT;
AGRICULTURAL
PRODUCTION -
MARKETING; CREDIT;
WOMEN'S
ORGANIZATIONS; CASE
STUDIES; PROJECT
EVALUATION

Location: MAIN 396 MUN
Record no. 28 Copies: 1

MANAGEMENT

Final report : technical
assistance in personnel
management to the Government of
Bhutan / Public Administration
Service, McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)
McLean, VA : Public
Administration Service, Jun
1988. 43 p.

Project: Assistance to Royal Civil
Service Commission,
BHU-85-006.

Availability: Restr. UNDP, United
Nations Plaza, New York, NY
10017, USA.

Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT;
TRAINING PROGRAMMES;
MANAGEMENT
DEVELOPMENT -
MANAGEMENT
TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER
PLANNING; CIVIL
SERVICE; TEACHING
METHODS; TECHNICAL
COOPERATION; PROJECT
REPORTS; RESTRICTED
DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN

Contractor's report on field
work performed in the delivery of
an in-country training programme
in Bhutan consisting of: 1)
public administration and accepted
techniques and processes of modern
management; 2) elements of a
personnel management system; and
3) orientation in the use of
manpower planning and assessment
methods as an integral element of
management in the public service.
Purpose of programme was to
strengthen and improve the
management capabilities of
officials responsible for managing
the public sector institutions of
Bhutan. Discusses methodology and
provides a week-by-week
description of project activities.
Reports all programme objectives
met or exceeded, and concludes
with findings based on a limited

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 5

CURRENT AWARENESS BULLETIN

needs assessment. Recommends, inter alia, more and frequent short-term training courses, skills workshops, seminars, etc.; trained trainers for each department; and development of personnel policy by Royal Civil Service Commission. Supporting documentation annexed.

Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB
Record no. 45 Copies: 1

POPULATION

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
New York, NY : UN, 1988. 38 p.
(Population policy paper ; no. 16)

Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY;
DEVELOPMENT PLANS -
POPULATION CENSUSES;
STATISTICAL TABLES;
NIGERIA

Location: MAIN 312(669) UN
Record no. 41 Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.

In: Progress, v. 2, no. 3, Sep 1982, p. 14-17.

Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT;
DEVELOPMENT
ADMINISTRATION -
RURAL AREAS; RURAL
POPULATION; SRI LANKA

Studies the District Integrated Rural Development Programme which commenced in 1976. Discusses the organizational setup, selection of districts, the government agencies involved and their activities.

Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER
Record no. 47 Copies: 1

TRADE

La contribution des buy'em sell'em au développement [The contribution of the "buy'em sell'em" to development] / N'Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
In: Femmes du Cameroun : mères pacifiques, femmes rebelles / Barbier, J.C., ed., p. 385-392.

Bondy : Orstom, 1985.
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8
Descriptors: PURCHASING;
MARKETING; WOMEN'S
ROLE - FOOD; CAMEROON
Location: MAIN 396 BAR
Record no. 27 Copies: 1

WATER

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)

In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT;
PUMPS; GROUNDWATER;
APPROPRIATE
TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO;
COST ANALYSIS

Location: MF176
Record no. 30 Copies: 1

WOMEN

Women, food and rural development
/ Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
(OECD. Development Centre, Paris
FR)

Conference on Rehabilitation
and Recovery in Subsaharan
Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov
1984

In: Crisis and recovery in
Subsaharan Africa / Rose,
Tore, ed., p. 104-110.
Paris : OECD, 1985.

Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD
PRODUCTION -
DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS;
BURKINA FASO; MALI

Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS

Record no. 10 Copies: 1

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 6

MAIN BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX

DEVELOPMENT - GENERAL

5001

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.

Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984

OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex.
Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I.
Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)

Paris : OECD, 1985. 335 p.

ISBN: 92-64-12749-6

Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION;
ECONOMIC POLICY;
INTERNATIONAL
ECONOMIC RELATIONS -
ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT;
SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT;
CONFERENCE REPORTS;
AFRICA SOUTH OF
SAHARA

See also record number(s) 5008 for part(s).

Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS

Copies: 1

HOUSING

5002

Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena

In: Progress, v. 2, no. 4, Dec 1982, p. 34-38.

Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL
POPULATION -
INVESTMENTS; SRI
LANKA

Examines the nature of housing problems among the rural population in Sri Lanka. Includes information about the investment

in housing and makes suggestions for improvement.

Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL
Copies: 1

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

5003

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepoku, W.O. (University of Ibadan. Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.

ISBN: 0-88936-366-8

Document number: IDRC-TS43e

Project: 3-A-80-4079.

Also published in French and Spanish.

Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS;
ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL
DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS;
IDRC - CARISPLAN;
DIS; INFOPLAN; UN;
EVALUATION;
RECOMMENDATIONS;
LATIN AMERICA;
CARIBBEAN; AFRICA;
PADIS

Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY

Copies: 2

5004

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981

MAIN BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX

Technical Meeting on Common
Methodologies, Mont
Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 Nov
1981

In: Recommended methods for
development-information
systems, v. 1
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1982. 272 p.
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING;
INFORMATION ANALYSIS
- DEVSIS; INDEXING;
CONTENT ANALYSIS;
AGRIS; METHODOLOGY;
ISIS; MINISIS

This publication contains
guidelines for the record
structure and content of
bibliographic records in
development-information systems.
It is intended to be a guide for
the designers of new systems and
for those seeking to improve
existing systems. The manual is
the result of 5-6 years experience
with a variety of regional and
national DEVSIS (Development
Sciences Information System)
systems and can be considered to
be an update of the technical
recommendations of the DEVSIS
Study Team in 1975. The major
part of the manual contains
field-by-field guidelines to be
used by a documentalist when
creating records in a
development-information system.
Numerous annexes are appended,
including a data-definition table,
sample completed worksheets, a
correspondence for UNISIST and
AGRIS field tags, guidelines for
implementation under MINISIS,
CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary,
and a bibliography.

Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR
Copies: 2

MANAGEMENT

5005

Final report : technical
assistance in personnel
management to the Government of
Bhutan / Public Administration
Service, McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)
McLean, VA : Public
Administration Service, Jun
1988. 43 p.

Project: Assistance to Royal Civil
Service Commission,
BHU-85-006.

Availability: Restr. UNDP, United
Nations Plaza, New York, NY
10017, USA.

Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT;
TRAINING PROGRAMMES;
MANAGEMENT
DEVELOPMENT -
MANAGEMENT
TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER
PLANNING; CIVIL
SERVICE; TEACHING
METHODS; TECHNICAL
COOPERATION; PROJECT
REPORTS; RESTRICTED
DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN

Contractor's report on field
work performed in the delivery of
an in-country training programme
in Bhutan consisting of: 1)
public administration and accepted
techniques and processes of modern
management; 2) elements of a
personnel management system; and
3) orientation in the use of
manpower planning and assessment
methods as an integral element of
management in the public service.
Purpose of programme was to
strengthen and improve the
management capabilities of
officials responsible for managing
the public sector institutions of
Bhutan. Discusses methodology and
provides a week-by-week
description of project activities.
Reports all programme objectives
met or exceeded, and concludes

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 6

MAIN BIBLIOGRAPHIC INDEX

with findings based on a limited needs assessment. Recommends, inter alia, more and frequent short-term training courses, skills workshops, seminars, etc.; trained trainers for each department; and development of personnel policy by Royal Civil Service Commission. Supporting documentation annexed.

Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB
Copies: 1

POPULATION

5006

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
New York, NY : UN, 1988. 38 p.
(Population policy paper ; no. 16)

Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY;
DEVELOPMENT PLANS -
POPULATION CENSUSES;
STATISTICAL TABLES;
NIGERIA

Location: MAIN 312(669) UN
Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

5007

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.

In: Progress, v. 2, no. 3, Sep 1982, p. 14-17.

Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT;
DEVELOPMENT
ADMINISTRATION -
RURAL AREAS; RURAL
POPULATION; SRI LANKA

Studies the District Integrated Rural Development Programme which commenced in 1976. Discusses the organizational setup, selection of

districts, the government agencies involved and their activities.

Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER
Copies: 1

WOMEN

5008

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred (OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)

Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Sub-Saharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984

In: Crisis and recovery in Sub-Saharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed., p. 104-110.

Paris : OECD, 1985.

Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD
PRODUCTION -
DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS;
BURKINA FASO; MALI

Parent record: 5001

Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS
Copies: 1

AUTHOR INDEX

AIYEPEKU, W.O.

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

MALIYADDE, CHANDRASENA

Rural housing problems (5002)

MORIN-LABATUT, GISELE

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

PERERA, K.P.G.M.

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

ROSE, TORE

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

SLY, MAUREEN

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

WEEKES-VAGLIANI, WINIFRED

Women, food and rural development (5008)

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 8

TITLE INDEX

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the
Government of Bhutan (5005)

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study
of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

Rural housing problems (5002)

Women, food and rural development (5008)

CORPORATE BODY INDEX

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE, OTTAWA, ON CA

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE. INFORMATION SCIENCES
DIVISION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

Women, food and rural development (5008)

PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION SERVICE, MCLEAN, VA US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

UN. POPULATION DIVISION, NEW YORK, NY US

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

UNDP, NEW YORK, NY US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

UNIVERSITE DE CLERMONT I. CENTRE D'ETUDES ET DE RECHERCHES SUR LE
DEVELOPPEMENT INTERNATIONAL, CLERMONT-FERRAND FR

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

UNIVERSITY OF IBADAN. DEPARTMENT OF LIBRARY STUDIES, IBADAN NG

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

UNIVERSITY OF SUSSEX. INSTITUTE OF DEVELOPMENT STUDIES, BRIGHTON GB

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 10

SUBJECT INDEX

CATALOGUING

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

DEVELOPMENT PLANS

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

DEVISIS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVISIS-type programs (5003)

ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVISIS-type programs (5003)

ECONOMIC POLICY

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

ECONOMIC RECESSION

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

FOOD PRODUCTION

Women, food and rural development (5008)

HOUSING

Rural housing problems (5002)

SUBJECT INDEX

IDRC

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INFORMATION ANALYSIS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

MANUALS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information
systems (5004)

PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

POPULATION POLICY

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

RURAL POPULATION

Rural housing problems (5002)

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 10

SUBJECT INDEX

TRAINING PROGRAMMES

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

WOMEN'S ROLE

Women, food and rural development (5008)

GEOGRAPHIC INDEX

AFRICA

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

BHUTAN

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to
the Government of Bhutan (5005)

BURKINA FASO

Women, food and rural development (5008)

CARIBBEAN

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

LATIN AMERICA

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative
study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

MALI

Women, food and rural development (5008)

NIGERIA

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

SRI LANKA

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

Rural housing problems (5002)

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 12

----- Your institution's name -----

LIBRARY PURCHASE ORDER

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Prentice-Hall of Canada
1870 Birchmount Road
Scarborough, ON
M1P 2J7
Canada

=====

ORDER NUMBER: 51

History of psychology : main currents in psychological
thought.
Leahey, T.
Englewood Cliffs, NJ : Prentice-Hall, 1987 -- 2d ed.
480 p.
ISBN: 0-13-391764-9

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 42.00 CAD

ORDER NUMBER: 52

Effective project planning and management : getting the job
done.
Randolph, W.A.; Posner, B.Z.
Englewood Cliffs, NJ : Prentice-Hall, 1988 163 p.
ISBN: 0-13-244815-7

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 21.00 CAD

=====

SHIP TO:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country

---- Your institution's name ----

LIBRARY PURCHASE ORDER

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Voluntary Health Association of India
C-14 Community Centre
Safdarjung Development Area
New Delhi 110 016
India

=====

ORDER NUMBER: 46

Learning exercises for health training.
Zelmer, A.; Harnar, R.; Zelmer, L.
New Delhi : Voluntary Health Association of India, 1986

NO. OF COPIES: 3 UNIT PRICE: 76 rupees
TOTAL: 228 rupees

=====

SHIP TO:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country

ANNEX 19

EXAMPLE 13

----- Your institution's name -----

ORDER CLAIM

CLAIM DATE: 1994-07-06

Prentice-Hall of Canada
1870 Birchmount Road
Scarborough, ON
M1P 2J7
Canada

=====

ORDER NUMBER: 51

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

History of psychology : main currents in psychological
thought.
Leahey, T.
Englewood Cliffs, NJ : Prentice-Hall, 1987 -- 2d ed.
480 p.
ISBN: 0-13-391764-9

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 42.00 CAD

ORDER NUMBER: 52

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Effective project planning and management : getting the job
done.
Randolph, W.A.; Posner, B.Z.
Englewood Cliffs, NJ : Prentice-Hall, 1988 163 p.
ISBN: 0-13-244815-7

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 21.00 CAD

=====

Our records show that this material has not yet been received.
Please indicate the status of this order below, and return to:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country

---- Your institution's name ----

ORDER CLAIM

CLAIM DATE: 1994-07-06

Voluntary Health Association of India
C-14 Community Centre
Safdarjung Development Area
New Delhi 110 016
India

=====

ORDER NUMBER: 46

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Learning exercises for health training.
Zelmer, A.; Harnar, R.; Zelmer, L.
New Delhi : Voluntary Health Association of India, 1986

NO. OF COPIES: 3 UNIT PRICE: 76 rupees
TOTAL: 228 rupees

=====

Our records show that this material has not yet been received.
Please indicate the status of this order below, and return to:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 14

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

AICARDES

SEE: Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche
pour le Développement Economique et Social (34)

AICARDES

SEE: Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres for
Economic and Social Development (39)

Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le
Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN (34)

OTHER LANG: Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres
for Economic and Social Development

Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres for Economic and
Social Development, Tunis TN (39)

OTHER LANG: Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de
Recherche pour le Développement Economique et
Social

Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT
(40)

Centre de Développement de l'OCDE

SEE: OCDE. Centre de Développement (16)

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International, Ottawa, ON
CA (5)

OTHER LANG: International Development Research Centre
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo, Ottawa,
ON CA (6)

OTHER LANG: International Development Research Centre
Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International

CIID

SEE: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
(6)

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (20)

COST
SEE: Caribbean Council for Science and Technology (40)

CRDI
SEE: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International
(5)

ECAFE, Bangkok TH (11)
SEE ALSO LATER NAME: ESCAP

ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT
(21)

Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)

ESCAP, Bangkok TH (3)
SEE ALSO EARLIER NAME: ECAFE

IDRC
SEE: International Development Research Centre (2)

IDS
SEE: University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies
(23)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (2)
OTHER LANG: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el
Desarrollo

International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague
NL (18)

ANNEX 19

EXAMPLE 14

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

ISNAR

SEE: International Service for National Agricultural Research
(18)

Nigeria. Federal Office of Statistics. Survey Organization and
Methods Division NG (4)

OCDE, Paris FR (33)
OTHER LANG: OECD

OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR (16)
OTHER LANG: OECD. Development Centre

OECD, Paris FR (32)
OTHER LANG: OCDE

OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (12)
OTHER LANG: OCDE. Centre de Développement

Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques
SEE: OCDE (33)

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
SEE: OECD (32)

SAREC

SEE: Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing
Countries (19)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries,
Stockholm SE (19)

UN. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

UN. Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 14

Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le
Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (43)

University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB
(23)

ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 15

SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE

Cahiers de la femme
SEE: Canadian woman studies (38)

Canadian woman studies (38)
ISSN: 0706-8204
FORMER TITLE: Canadian women's studies

Chronique OMS (26)
ISSN: 0373-3556
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Crónica de la OMS

Crónica de la OMS (22)
ISSN: 0250-8591
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Chronique OMS

WHO chronicle (35)
ISSN: 0042-9694
OTHER LANG: Crónica de la OMS
Chronique OMS

WHO offset publication (42)

SUPPLIER AUTHORITY FILE

Asian Productivity Organization (APRO)
4-14 Akasaka 8-chome
Minato-ku
Tokyo
Japan

(MFN: 49)

University Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited (UNIB)
University of Ibadan
Ibadan
Nigeria

Agency for FAO publications.
(MFN: 50)

Voluntary Health Association of India (VHAI)
C-14 Community Centre
Safdarjung Development Area
New Delhi 110 016
India

(MFN: 14)

This annex describes the INMAGIC Plus⁴³ implementation of the bibliographic database located on the diskette attached to this manual. Information is provided here on the sample database, the associated entry of data and retrieval of information, and the procedures to install and use the database. It is assumed that users are familiar with INMAGIC and its terminology.

CONTENTS

- I COMMENTS ABOUT THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION
- II OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE
- III INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER
- IV THE SAMPLE APPLICATION
 - 1. List of fields in INMAGIC
 - 2. Variances from the Field-by-Field Guide
 - 3. List of records
 - 4. Passwords
 - 5. Modifying the data structures
 - 6. Order key
- V DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION
 - 1. Passwords
 - 2. Validation
- VI DISPLAYING INFORMATION ON YOUR SCREEN
- VII REPORT GENERATION
 - 1. Differences between MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC
 - 2. Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin
 - 3. Resequencing the data for printed bibliographic indexes
 - 4. Generating the printed bibliographic indexes
 - 5. Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders
 - 6. Modifying the reports
- VIII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK
- IX CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS
- X INDEXING
- XI SEARCHING
- XII LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

⁴³ INMAGIC Plus is a proprietary software product of Inmagic Inc., 2067 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140-1338, USA. It is referred to as INMAGIC throughout this manual.

I COMMENTS ABOUT THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

The database defined using INMAGIC parallels that defined throughout this manual using MICRO-ISIS. INMAGIC was chosen to demonstrate an alternative implementation because it is a well-known and popular software in both developed and developing countries. The data in the INMAGIC database, called MIBIS, was actually generated from the MICRO-ISIS database (to avoid rekeying the data), using a special display format in MICRO-ISIS to prepare the data for use with INMAGIC.

The implementation is based on INMAGIC Plus version 1.0, release 4.0, for MS-DOS.

The differences between the two textual database systems require some changes to the way data are handled. Specifically:

- Lookups are not possible in INMAGIC. In place of authority records, all data are embedded directly into the INMAGIC MIBIS bibliographic records.
- Subfields are not supported (INMAGIC documentation sometimes refers to subfields, but uses the term to mean occurrences of a repeatable field). For the most part, data kept in subfields in MICRO-ISIS are combined into simple fields in INMAGIC, with appropriate punctuation placed within the data fields. In some cases, noted in **Section IV: Sample application**, data from subfielded fields in MICRO-ISIS have been split into multiple fields in INMAGIC.
- Only the first 50 fields defined in an INMAGIC database can be indexed (in INMAGIC, inversion is referred to as indexing). To accommodate this, the order of the fields in the INMAGIC definition has been altered from that in the MICRO-ISIS implementation.
- INMAGIC refers to fields by **labels**, which are required, and by **names**, which are optional. However, INMAGIC limits the total number of characters that can be used in the definition of field labels and names. The resulting labels are, therefore, very brief and sometimes not as descriptive as might be desired. In some cases, the field label has been supplemented by a field name. Whenever INMAGIC displays a field identifier, it uses the field name if one is present. Otherwise, the field label is displayed.
- INMAGIC does not support the use of triangular brackets to exclude certain leading articles from consideration in sorts. It does have its own facility, on the other hand, to exclude a select number of leading articles when a field is indexed or sorted as a term. The leading articles are defined with the database structure, and can be modified.⁴⁴
- INMAGIC does not support indexing terms delimited by triangular brackets.
- INMAGIC has no facility to test explicitly for the presence or absence of a field in a report definition. This affects the sorting and the formatting of the data.

The approach taken here to define an INMAGIC implementation that parallels the MICRO-ISIS implementation is not the way in which one would normally design a bibliographic system, and does not make best use of INMAGIC's features and structure. To assist in designing INMAGIC applications, Inmagic Inc. has produced *INMAGIC Plus: Library Guide*,⁴⁵ which includes techniques, suggestions, and models to handle cataloguing, acquisitions, serials control, and circulation.

⁴⁴ The INMAGIC default leading articles are used with the sample database. They are: a, an, the. If you wish to change the leading articles, you must do so for all three database structures: MIBIS, TITLC, and MIBIS2.

⁴⁵ *INMAGIC Plus: Library Guide*. Cambridge, MA, Inmagic Inc., 1992.

II OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE

All information required for the INMAGIC implementation is located on the diskette, which contains one directory related to the INMAGIC implementation. This directory, called **INMAGIC**, contains the following databases:

MIBIS, consisting of records that demonstrate most of the features described in this manual,
MIBIS2, which is only used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes, and contains the appropriate records from MIBIS, but resequenced by Broad subject heading, and renumbered,
E-MIBIS2, an empty database, which can be used to initialize MIBIS2,
TITLC, which is only used to produce the title catalogue, and
E-TITLC, an empty database, which can be used to initialize TITLC.

Report definitions, validation lookup files, and user search menus are provided in the same directory for use with MIBIS, MIBIS2, and TITLC.

III INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER

To use the sample application, you must copy the contents of directory **INMAGIC** to the directory on your hard disk that contains the INMAGIC system software.

There are references throughout this annex to optional changes to be made to the reports and the data structures. Whether the changes are applicable is determined by whether you are part of a formal information network and by the language(s) of the system. It is also expected that you may not require all the fields, or may wish to modify the sample implementation in other ways to suit your particular needs.

With one exception, you need not make any of the changes suggested. The exception applies for the exchange of data in a formal information network. In this case, you must make the indicated changes to the exchange report (see **Section VIII: Exchanging data in a formal information network**).

Note If you have developed an INMAGIC application using the first edition of this manual, and wish to update this application using the definitions for this edition, proceed as follows:

- In the Auxiliary menu (or Auxiliary environment in INMAGIC 7.x), write the complete database to a file, sorting on **field REC**.
- Using an ASCII editor or a wordprocessor, change the following field labels:

from	to
L	LV
PRTS	PRT
LOC	L
PR	PREC
PRICE	PR

When changing these field labels, always search for the name preceded by a carriage return and followed by a space to avoid changing similar character combinations elsewhere in the data. For example, to change LEVEL to LV, search for “[enter]LEVEL ” and replace this with “[enter]LV ”.

- Import the modified file using the import command in the Utilities menu.

IV THE SAMPLE APPLICATION

1 List of Fields in INMAGIC

The following table describes the fields defined in the INMAGIC database called MIBIS, and their corresponding field tags defined in this manual for MICRO-ISIS. They are listed in the order in which they are defined in the MIBIS data structure.

List of fields (INMAGIC)⁴⁶

Field label	Field name	MICRO-ISIS tag	Description	Indexing
REC		MFN	Record number	T 2
PC		001	Participating centre acronym	T 2
RS	RSTAT	003	Record status	T 2
E	EDATE	005	Date record entered	T 3
LV	LEVEL	007	Bibliographic level, and	T 2
		008	Bibliographic level — parent	
CO	CNTRY	009	Country of origin	T 2
LA		020	Language of analysis	
LT		021	Language(s) of text	T 2
LS		022	Language(s) of summaries	
T	TITLE	100	Title	Y 5
PT	PTITLE	101	Parallel title(s)	Y 5
AU	AUTHOR	110	Personal author(s)	T 7
CAU	CAUTHOR	111	Corporate author(s)	Y 5

⁴⁶ Indexing techniques used:

T = complete term,

K = keyword,

Y = both complete term and keyword,

2 = treat numeric characters as numbers, leading articles are significant,

3 = ignore punctuation and leading articles,

5 = ignore leading articles, consecutive punctuation is treated as a space,

6 = text is inverted as is, and lower and upper case is significant, and

7 = like 5, but does not ignore leading articles.

ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

Field label	Field name	MICRO-ISIS tag	Description	Indexing
AF	AFFIL	112	Affiliation	K 5
IN	OTHINST	113	Other associated institution(s)	K 5
M	MEET	114	Meeting(s) ⁴⁷	Y 5
MISOD		114^e	Meeting date — ISO form	T 3
ED		120	Edition	
PUB		121	Publisher	
D	PDATE	122	Date of publication/issue — free form	
ISOD		123	Date of publication/issue — ISO form	T 3
COL		130	Collation (M/C)	
PRT		131	Part statement	
MS		140	Monographic series	K 5
PRJ		142^a	Project name(s)	K 5
PRJNO		142^b	Project number(s)	T 6
ISBN		160	ISBN(s)	
DOC		161	Document number(s)	T 6
S	STITLE	200	Title of serial	
ISSN		201	ISSN	
TP	TPRN	202	Title of parent (M/C)	
AP	APRN	210	Personal author(s) — parent	
CP	CPRN	211	Corporate author(s) — parent	
PDES		300	Primary descriptors	T 5
SDES		301	Secondary descriptors	T 5
GDES		302	Geographic descriptors	T 5
LDES		303	Local descriptors	T 5
XDES		304	Proposed descriptors	T 5
AB	ABSTRACT	310	Abstract	
SUB		320	Broad subject heading	T 5
PS	PSTAT	400	Processing status	T 2
L	LOCATION	410	Location(s)	T 2

⁴⁷ Derived from **field 114**, using data in all subfields except **subfield e**.

ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

Field label	Field name	MICRO-ISIS tag	Description	Indexing
CALLNO		411	Call number	
MT	MTYPE	420	Type of material	T 2
AT	ATYPE	500	Acquisition type	T 2
OD	ODATE	510	Date ordered	T 3
CD	CLAIMD	511	Date claimed	T 3
RECD		512	Date received	T 3
RQ		514	Requester(s)	T 7
SNAM		515^a	Supplier name	Y 5
SADD		515	Supplier address ⁴⁸	
O	OCOPIES	513	Number of copies ordered	
PR	PRICE	516	Price	
ANOTE		517	Acquisition notes	
C	COPIES	412	Number of copies	
ANO	ACCESSION	413	Accession number(s)	
A	AVAIL	162	Availability	
TH	THESIS	141	Thesis	
N	NOTES	150	Notes	
TE	TRTE	102	Translated title — English	
TF	TRTF	103	Translated title — French	
TS	TRTS	104	Translated title — Spanish	
TO	TRTO	105	Translated title — other language	
RPRN		010	Record number of parent	
RPART		011	Record number(s) of part(s)	
ROLAN		012	Record number(s) of other language version(s)	
INIT		430	Documentalist(s)	
CH	CHDATE	006	Date record changed	
PREC		002	Participating centre record number	

⁴⁸ Derived from field 515, using data in all subfields except subfield a.

ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

2 Variances from the Field-by-Field Guide

The following table describes the changes that were made to the fields in INMAGIC from the definitions used in MICRO-ISIS and described in the **Field-by-Field Guide**. These changes were made to accommodate the operating requirements of INMAGIC.

MICRO-ISIS field	Change made, and reason
007 008	Bibliographic level The two fields are combined into one in INMAGIC to allow for slightly more room for indexed fields in the database definition. Valid entries for this field are: AM, AC, AS, M, MC, MS, C, and CS.
114	Meeting(s) This field has been split into two in INMAGIC, called MEET and MISOD . The ISO-format date (subfield e in MICRO-ISIS) is kept in MISOD . This improves both the presentation of the meeting information in the printed outputs and allows for indexing of the date.
142	Project(s) This field has been split into two in INMAGIC, called PRJ and PRJNO . The project name (subfield a in MICRO-ISIS) is kept in PRJ , and the number (subfield b in MICRO-ISIS) in PRJNO . This allows for indexing by project number.
300 301 302 303 304	Descriptors Descriptors are kept between triangular brackets in MICRO-ISIS. To properly index them in INMAGIC, each descriptor is kept in a separate occurrence of the appropriate field.
515	Supplier This field has been implemented as two fields in INMAGIC. The contents of subfield a (supplier name) are kept in the INMAGIC field SNAM , and the contents of subfields b through e (address lines and country) are kept as separate occurrences of the INMAGIC field SADD . This allows for the indexing of the supplier name, and the proper formatting of the supplier name and address in the purchase orders and order claims.

As well, data from all other fields that are subfielded in MICRO-ISIS are combined, with appropriate punctuation separating the original subfields, into simple fields in INMAGIC. For example, the Publisher (field **PUB**) contains the place, country code and publisher name. Therefore, this information always appears together in outputs containing the Publisher field.

Similarly, information from authority records in MICRO-ISIS is entered directly into the bibliographic records in INMAGIC.

Although five databases are defined, you will work mostly with **MIBIS**. All bibliographic records are maintained in this database. Database **MIBIS2** is only used to produce printed bibliographic indexes, and database **TITLC** is used to print the title catalogue. **E-MIBIS2** is used to initialize MIBIS2, and **E-TITLC** is used to initialize TITLC.

3 List of Records

The MIBIS database contains 25 records, which match the 25 bibliographic records contained in the MICRO-ISIS sample database. For convenience, the retrieval key field, **REC**, has been given values corresponding to the MFN numbers of the records in MICRO-ISIS. The records are:

REC 1	Monograph from a collection (English-language version)
REC 7	Article from a periodical
REC 8	Monograph
REC 9	Monograph (conference proceedings)
REC 10	Chapter from a monograph
REC 13	Monograph
REC 15	Monograph with translated title
REC 17	Collection with parallel title (conference proceedings)
REC 24	Monograph from a collection (French-language version)
REC 25	Monograph
REC 27	Chapter from a monograph
REC 28	Collection
REC 29	Chapter from a collection
REC 30	Article from a periodical
REC 31	Monograph with parallel title
REC 36	Monograph in a monographic series
REC 37	Monograph
REC 41	Monograph in a monographic series
REC 44	Monograph (thesis)
REC 45	Monograph (United Nations document)
REC 46	Acquisitions record
REC 47	Article from a periodical
REC 48	Article from a periodical
REC 51	Acquisitions record
REC 52	Acquisitions record

4 Passwords

Passwords are defined in database MIBIS to limit access to fields used for data entry and modification (see **Section V: Data entry and modification**). An empty password provides unrestricted access to the database. The passwords are:

master password:	MASTER
data entry passwords:	MIBIS, PARTM, PARTS, ACQIS
general access password:	empty (just press <i>[enter]</i>)

No passwords are defined for MIBIS2 or TITLC.

The master password is required to modify the data structure. The general access password (which is an empty password — just press *[enter]* when prompted) is used for everything else, except data entry.

5 Modifying the Data Structures

You may wish to modify the database definitions to suit your particular needs. INMAGIC databases can only be modified in certain ways. It is not possible to change a field label, delete it, or move it, once it has been defined. Therefore, you may need to rebuild the definition from scratch. Be sure to first print the definition provided as a guide. If desired, preserve the data in the sample database in an external file, by selecting the Auxiliary menu, then selecting *Export*, and finally specifying *All*. Provide the full name of file: **DATA.TXT**

In particular, you may wish to make the following changes to the database definitions:

- If you are not part of a formal information network, you can remove the Record status (field **RSTAT**), its validation rule, and its validation lookup table, **RECSTAT.VAL**.
- If you are implementing a unilingual system, you can remove the Language of analysis (field **LA**). If, however, you will also be exporting records to a multilingual system, you must also create an entry for the Language of analysis (field **LA**) in the report, called **EXCHANGE**, used to reformat the data for the purpose of exchanging it (see **Section VIII: Exchanging data in a formal information network**).

When making changes, you may also have to make changes to the definitions for MIBIS2 and TITLC, and to the reports (see **Section VII**, part 6), search prompt files, and validation files. Finally, you should rebuild the databases (file specifications) by deleting them in DOS, and rebuilding them in the Define menu of INMAGIC. However, take care to first save the validation rules, which are kept with the file specifications, by pressing **[Alt-W]** within the Validation screen. The following table shows the correspondence between the data structures and the file specifications:

Data structure	File specification	DOS filenames ⁴⁹
MIBIS	MIBIS	MIBIS.*
MIBIS2	MIBIS2 E-MIBIS2	MIBIS2.* E-MIBIS2.*
TITLC	TITLC E-TITLC	TITLC.* E-TITLC.*

The data structures for MIBIS2 and TITLC are based on the data structure for MIBIS, but do not contain any fields that are not needed in the reports produced from them. As well, indexing has been reduced to the minimum needed to sort the appropriate fields for the reports. If preferred, the data structure for MIBIS could be used for all the databases, but more disk space would be required, and the loading of data in the Utilities menu would take longer.

⁴⁹ Refer to "About INMAGIC Files" in Chapter 9 of the *Inmagic Plus User's Manual*. In particular, the database structure and files can have filename extensions STR, DAT, DIC, DTM, DCM, and DQM.

6 Order Key

Many of the printed outputs require a final sort by title. For this reason, **field Title** has been specified as the order key in the data structures for MIBIS. INMAGIC will automatically sequence the data using the title if all other fields on which the data are sorted are the same. For example, in an author catalogue, two items by the same author will be sorted under that author by their title. The order key feature of INMAGIC is an extra index that allows this final sort to be produced more efficiently than could be done otherwise. However, it only operates if 2 500 or fewer records are selected. Should a larger report be produced, the secondary sort on **field Title** must be requested in the PRINT command in the Report menu.

Similarly, the order key for database MIBIS2 is **field REC** to properly sequence the records in index reports.

No order key is specified for database TITLC.

V DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION

1 Passwords

Passwords have been defined with the MIBIS database to restrict the fields accessible to the data entry operator. Only those fields applicable to the type of material being described (or the information necessary for acquisitions) are given CHANGE access. Four data entry passwords are defined that match the four data entry worksheets available in MICRO-ISIS for bibliographic records. They are:

MIBIS	Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing a monograph or collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level M, MC, MS, C, or CS).
PARTM	Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a monograph or a collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level AM or AC).
PARTS	Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a serial (i.e., a record with bibliographic level AS).
ACQIS	Supply this password to enter or modify an acquisitions record, regardless of its bibliographic level.

Examples of how to use the data entry passwords

1. A monograph is ordered, received, and catalogued by your centre:

When ordering the item, use **ACQIS** to enter the basic bibliographic and acquisitions information for the monograph.

When the item is received, use **ACQIS** to update Processing status (**field PSTAT**), Date received (**field RECD**), and other information as appropriate.

Use **MIBIS** to complete the descriptive cataloguing and add the call number, descriptors, abstract, etc.

2. Your centre has received a copy of a conference proceedings that has already been catalogued as a monograph. You now wish to add records describing individual papers of particular interest to your centre:

Use **PARTM** to enter a bibliographic record for each paper to be described.

Use **MIBIS** to update the record for the conference proceedings (i.e., the parent record) to add the appropriate REC values in Record number(s) of part(s) (field **RPART**).

2 Validation

Some validation has been defined for data entry for the MIBIS database. This is meant to be indicative only — it is expected that you will wish to modify this to suit your requirements. To change the validation rules, select the *Define* menu, then select *Validation*. Request database *MIBIS* and provide the password *MASTER*.

In some fields, only a select number of entries are valid. The following table lists the fields on which lookups are performed, and the name of the lookup file. The lookup files provided consist of valid entries taken from the **Field-by-Field Guide**, the appropriate annexes, or the sample database itself. To change any of these tables, use an ASCII editor, or a word processor that can save the text in ASCII.

Field	Lookup File
RSTAT	RECSTAT.VAL
LEVEL	LEVEL.VAL
CNTRY	COUNTRY.VAL
LA	LANGUAGE.VAL
LT	LANGUAGE.VAL
LS	LANGUAGE.VAL
SUB	SUBJECT.VAL
PSTAT	PROCSTAT.VAL
MTYPE	MTYPE.VAL
ATYPE	ATYPE.VAL

VI DISPLAYING INFORMATION ON YOUR SCREEN

Reports have been defined to display selected information on your screen. These parallel similar reports provided to produce printed outputs (see **Section VII**), but with page-heading information removed, and pauses inserted between screens. The reports provided are:

- M** The information shown is similar to that provided with the printed catalogues.
- MA** is identical to M, but also displays the abstract.

Both reports display the Processing status (field **PSTAT**), so you can tell at what stage the items are in the ordering and cataloguing cycle.

VII REPORT GENERATION

A number of reports have been predefined. As much as possible, they match the predefined reports provided in MICRO-ISIS (see Section XII of **Annex 19** for printed outputs using the sample database in MICRO-ISIS). The following reports are provided:

printed catalogues, which, with the exception of the title catalogue, are produced directly from the main sample database, MIBIS (the title catalogue is printed from the TITLC database);

a current awareness bulletin, also produced directly from MIBIS;

a main bibliographic index, produced from the MIBIS2 database (MIBIS2 is a temporary database created using selected records from MIBIS, which are resequenced by Broad subject heading (field **SUB**), and then renumbered);

other indexes that refer to the main bibliographic index, also produced from MIBIS2; and

purchase orders and claims for overdue orders, produced from MIBIS.

The sample reports are not included in this annex, because they are similar to those in **Annex 19**. However, you can print the sample reports directly using the steps outlined in this section.

All predefined reports are designed for use with a printer. If necessary, a report can be cancelled by pressing *[esc]*.

The following provides more information on the reports.

1 Differences between MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC

MICRO-ISIS makes a distinction in how records are formatted (as defined in display formats), and how these records are combined with headings, etc. and laid out on a page (as defined using system worksheets). The two aspects are defined together in a report in INMAGIC. Therefore, separate reports need to be defined for use with screen displays and with printed outputs. MICRO-ISIS also uses system worksheets to define the sorting requirements to produce a report, whereas INMAGIC requires the user to specify the sort commands every time a report is required. Furthermore, INMAGIC sometimes appends a space after the last occurrence of a field — this cannot be suppressed. This results in unusual punctuation. For example, in record REC=1, an extra space appears after ISIS in:

ISIS ; MINISIS

2 Printed Catalogues and Current Awareness Bulletin

2.1 Selecting the data to be printed

Normally, to produce the current awareness bulletin, you would request a search on the Processing status (**field PSTAT**) for records with the status value LIST. Similarly, to produce the printed catalogues, search for records with the Processing status LIST or CAT. However, you may need to further qualify these searches to eliminate records for which no information is provided in the field on which the data are to be sorted. For example, the corporate author catalogue must only be produced using records with one or more entries in the Corporate author field (**CAUTHOR**). This requires a further search in the Search menu, which must be combined, using AND, with the search described above. Otherwise, records that do not contain data in the field on which they are sorted will appear at the beginning of the report. Because INMAGIC has no facility to explicitly test for the presence of a field in a record, a generalized search expression is required, namely, *****.

Predefined user search menus are provided to simplify selecting the data to be printed. These can be requested on the Search menu using **[F8]**. Therefore, you should use the following keystrokes in the Search menu to retrieve the appropriate data for the reports:

Report	Search menu keystrokes
Author catalogue	[F8], AUTHC, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, CAT, [enter]
Title catalogue	[F8], TITLC, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, CAT, [enter]
Corporate author catalogue	[F8], CORPC, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, CAT, [enter]
Meeting catalogue	[F8], MEETC, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, CAT, [enter]
Current awareness bulletin	[F8], CAB, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, [enter]

2.2 Sorting and printing the selected records

The following table shows the keystrokes to use, starting in the Search menu, to produce the desired report using the records selected above:

Report	Search and Report menu keystrokes
Author catalogue	Report, Sort, AUTHOR, [enter], Explode, Format, AUTHC, [enter], Print
Title catalogue	Report, Format, TITLC1, [enter], Write, TITLC.TXT, [enter], Overwrite
Corporate author catalogue	Report, Sort, CAUTHOR, [enter], Explode, Format, CORPC, [enter], Print
Meeting catalogue	Report, Sort, MEET, [enter], Explode, Format, MEETC, [enter], Print
Current awareness bulletin	Report, Sort, SUB, [enter], Format, CAB, [enter], Print

If more than 2 500 records are being printed in any of the above reports except the title catalogue, add the keystrokes **sUbsort, TITLE, and [enter]** before **Format**.

Example

For a large author catalogue, use the following keystrokes:

Report, Sort, AUTHOR, [enter], Explode, sUbsort, TITLE, [enter], Format, AUTHC, [enter], Print

2.3 Further processing required to produce the title catalogue

The title catalogue requires a few extra steps to produce because INMAGIC cannot merge two sort fields in the Report menu. On the other hand, the Auxiliary menu, in which a merge is possible, does not allow one to report from a subset of the database. Therefore, the steps outlined above copy records selected in the Search menu to a temporary file called **TITLC.TXT**. This file can then be loaded into a database called **TITLC**, from which the title catalogue can be printed. The following steps complete the process to print the title catalogue:

- Exit from INMAGIC.
- In DOS, initialize the **TITLC** database with the following DOS command, over-writing the contents of the **TITLC** database, if present:

```
COPY  E-TITLC.*  TITLC.*
```

- In INMAGIC, to load the **TITLC** database, specify the following keystrokes starting from the Main menu:

Utilities, Import, Database, TITLC, [enter], File to import, TITLC.TXT, [enter], Go

- In INMAGIC, to print the title catalogue using the **TITLC** database, specify the following keystrokes starting from the Main menu:

Open database, TITLC, [enter], Auxiliary, Sort, TITLE, [enter], Merge, PTITLE, [enter], Format, TITLC2, [enter], Print

The title catalogue is now printed. To delete the temporary files used to hold the data copied from MIBIS to **TITLC**:

- Exit INMAGIC.
- In DOS, execute the following DOS commands:

```
ERASE  TITLC.TXT  
ERASE  TITLC.D*
```

2.4 Variation from the MICRO-ISIS report

All the reports except the current awareness bulletin are similar in INMAGIC and MICRO-ISIS. The current awareness bulletin is printed as a single column report, because INMAGIC has no facility to produce multi-column printed output.

3 Resequencing the Data for Printed Bibliographic Indexes

The bibliographic records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes must first be sorted by Broad subject heading (**field SUB**), and within that by Title (**field TITLE**). They are then printed with new reference numbers assigned sequentially to them. INMAGIC has no direct

means of renumbering records after they have been sorted.⁵⁰ To produce the desired printed bibliographic indexes, the records must be placed into a second database after they have been sorted. Variable REC must contain the new record numbers in this second database, called MIBIS2. The values in REC are then used as the sequential numbers assigned to the material in the main bibliographic index, and referenced in the other printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11 in Section XII of **Annex 19**).

To resequence the data, you must perform the following steps:

- In DOS, initialize the MIBIS2 database with the following DOS command, overwriting the files if they are present:

```
COPY E-MIBIS2.* MIBIS2.*
```

- In INMAGIC, using the MIBIS database, create file RENUMBER.TXT containing the records to be loaded into the MIBIS2 database, using the following keystrokes in the Search menu:

```
[F8], RENUMBER, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, [enter], Report, Sort, SUB, [enter],  
sUbsort, TITLE, [enter], Format, RENUMBER, [enter], Write, RENUMBER.TXT,  
[enter]
```

The keystrokes *sUbsort*, *TITLE*, *[enter]* are not required if fewer than 2 500 records are selected.

Note You may wish to modify the MAINI user search menu, or use keystrokes different from ***, *[tab]*, *list*, *[enter]*.

Specify *Overwrite* if asked.

When asked, supply the starting record number for the resequenced database.

- Exit the Search menu.
- Load database MIBIS2 with the records in file RENUMBER.TXT, using the following keystrokes in the Utilities menu:

```
Import, Database, MIBIS2, [enter], File to import, RENUMBER.TXT, [enter], Go
```

- Exit INMAGIC.
- In DOS, execute the following DOS command:

```
ERASE RENUMBER.TXT
```

The MIBIS2 database can now be used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes.

4 Generating the Printed Bibliographic Indexes

You can produce the main bibliographic index and other printed bibliographic indexes anytime after you have created the resequenced MIBIS2 database. You can print any bibliographic

⁵⁰ INMAGIC does allow records to be numbered as they are printed. This would be adequate to produce the main bibliographic index, but would not allow one to refer to these new numbers in the other bibliographic indexes.

index using the Auxiliary menu,⁵¹ so long as you ensure that MIBIS2 is the active database. In the Auxiliary menu, you must first specify the sort to be performed, and then request the report. The following table shows the keystrokes to use in the Auxiliary menu to produce the desired index report.

Report	Auxiliary menu keystrokes
Main bibliographic index	Sort, <i>SUB</i> , [enter], Format, <i>MAINI</i> , [enter], Print
Author index	Sort, <i>AUTHOR</i> , [enter], Format, <i>AUTHI</i> , [enter], Print
Title index	Sort, <i>TITLE</i> , [enter], Merge, <i>PTITLE</i> , Format, <i>TITLI</i> , [enter], Print
Corporate body index	Sort, <i>CAUTHOR</i> , [enter], Merge, <i>AFFIL</i> , [enter], Merge, <i>OTHINST</i> , [enter], Format, <i>CORPI</i> , [enter], Print
Subject index	Sort, <i>PDES</i> , [enter], Format, <i>SUBJI</i> , [enter], Print
Geographic index	Sort, <i>GDES</i> , [enter], Format, <i>GEOGI</i> , [enter], Print

If you are printing several of the bibliographic index reports in one session, you may have to leave the Auxiliary menu, and then return to it, to clear the settings for each new report.

When all the printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, you can erase the files associated with MIBIS2, to free up disk space. Use the DOS command:

```
ERASE MIBIS2.D*
```

4.1 Variations from the MICRO-ISIS bibliographic indexes

With two exceptions, the bibliographic indexes produced are the same using INMAGIC and MICRO-ISIS. The exceptions are:

1. The main bibliographic index does not include information found in the following fields:

Record number of parent (**field RPRN**)

Record number(s) of part(s) (**field RPART**)

Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field ROLAN**)

This is because there is no means to determine what these numbers are in the resequenced database in INMAGIC.

As well, this index is printed in a single column, because INMAGIC cannot produce a multi-column report directly.

2. The corporate author index cannot be produced in an identical fashion because the corporate body fields (corporate author(s), affiliation, and other associated

⁵¹ In INMAGIC, the Auxiliary menu is used to print reports that use all the records in the database, as is the case for the printed bibliographic indexes (using database MIBIS2). The Search and Report menus are used to print records selected from a search.

institution(s)) contain slightly different data. In MICRO-ISIS, only subfields a, b, c, and d (Main body, Sub-body, Place, and Country code) are used to sort the information in the report, and are printed as headings. In INMAGIC, the complete field is used. This includes the Role information (subfield e) kept in the Other associated institution(s) field. Therefore, the role is printed with the heading, which sometimes results in more than one entry for the same corporate body.

Example

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR
 Women, food and rural development (5008)

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR (SPONSOR)
 Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

5 Printing Purchase Orders and Claims for Overdue Orders

Two predefined reports are provided to print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders.

Before using the supplied reports the first time, modify them to reflect your organization's requirements. In particular, you should provide your institution's name and address in the following lines:

Report	File name	Lines to change
Purchase orders	ORDER.FMO	E/2, E/25 to E/29
Claim for overdue orders	CLAIM.FMO	E/2, E/27 to E/31

If you are changing the number of lines in the report, ensure that the reference to the LINE SAME command (E/22 in ORDER.FMO and E/23 in CLAIM.FMO) is adjusted as required.

To print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders, you should select the acquisitions records to be printed in the Search menu of INMAGIC. Select records with Processing status (field PSTAT) set to ORD. Use the following keystrokes in the Search menu to select the items to print:

Report	Search menu keystrokes
Purchase orders	<i>[F8], ORDER, [enter], ORD, [enter]</i>
Claim for overdue orders	<i>[F8], CLAIM, [enter], ORD, [tab], > , [a date in ISO format], [enter]</i>

Note You may wish to change the user search menus for the purchase orders and claim for overdue orders, or the search values to be entered using the user search menus. The search described above for the purchase orders selects all those records with Processing status (field PSTAT) set to ORD, and with no value present in the Date ordered (field ODATE). For claims for overdue books, specify a date in ISO format for the Date ordered (field ODATE) and the Date claimed (field CLAIMD). Select the date in such a manner that you will not be sending a claim to a supplier for an item recently ordered or recently claimed.

It is also necessary to set today's date in ISO format in one field in the database before printing the report. After having identified the records, continue with the following keystrokes to set the Date ordered (field **ODATE**) for purchase orders or the Date claimed (field **CLAIMD**) for claims for overdue orders:

Report	Modification keystrokes
Purchase orders	<i>Modify, ODATE, [enter], Last, [enter], Append, [enter], [today's date in ISO format], [F2], Yes</i>
Claim for overdue orders	<i>Modify, CLAIMD, [enter], Last, [enter], Append, [enter], [today's date in ISO format], [F2], Yes</i>

The report can now be printed. Continue by entering the following keystrokes:

Report	Print keystrokes
Purchase orders	<i>Report, Sort, SNAM, [enter], sUbsort, REC, [enter], Format, ORDER, [enter], Print</i>
Claim for overdue orders	<i>Report, Sort, SNAM, [enter], sUbsort, REC, [enter], Format, CLAIM, [enter], Print</i>

Note 1 The two predefined reports are formatted differently than the reports shown in **Annex 19**. Limitations in INMAGIC prevent the grouping of multiple orders to the same supplier on the same page, as laid out in CDS/ISIS. The purchase orders and claims for overdue orders are, therefore, laid out one item to a page. The pages are sorted by supplier. If you wish, you can restrict the search in the ORDER and CLAIM user search menus to a specific supplier.

Note 2 You may wish to change the picture format item used to display the total cost (line E/23 in ORDER.FMO and line E/24 in CLAIM.FMO) and, if appropriate, add a constant value for the currency. INMAGIC has no capability to change the formatting dynamically for various currencies.

6 Modifying the Reports

Modifying the reports to suit your own needs is straight-forward in INMAGIC. If you have modified the data structures for the databases from which the reports are produced, you may need to modify the reports. This may not always be possible from the compiled report. Therefore, you may wish to write the reports to a file before any changes are made to the data structures. Do this by requesting the report in the Define menu, and pressing **[Alt-W]**. After the data structures are modified, you can use the file (ASCII) version of the report by requesting a new report, and then specifying the report name preceded by an "@" character. For example, to modify the author catalogue report, specify **@AUTHC** and respond with a "Y" when asked if it is OK to replace the existing definition.

If you plan to change the line width in any report, you may have to adjust the second value in COLUMN commands in that report. Also ensure that any references to specific lines in a report, using the LINE SAME command, remain correct if you insert or delete lines in a report.

VIII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

1 Preparing the Conversion Report

A report, called **EXCHANGE**, is provided to enable participating centres (PCs) to exchange data with the coordinating centre (CC). It must be customized for use with a particular PC as follows:

1. The PC acronym must be entered in place of the word “acronym” in lines E/1 and E/3.

In line E/1, the acronym is used to help create a unique identifier (**field REC**) for use at the CC. The unique identifier in this case is the acronym of the PC and the value of REC. Your own network may select other methods of assigning unique identifiers to records.

In line E/3, it is used to provide the value for the Participating centre acronym (**field PC**).

Example

change the lines:

```
E/1  REC, BEGIN 'REC acronym'
E/3  'PC acronym'
```

to:

```
E/1  REC, BEGIN 'REC CODESRIA'
E/3  'PC CODESRIA'
```

where CODESRIA is the acronym of the PC.

Therefore, CODESRIA's record with REC set to 57 will be assigned the value CODESRIA57 for REC in the CC's database.

2. Whenever records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, the language code corresponding to the language of the system must be entered as text in the report definition in line E/7. This language code will be assigned to the Language of analysis (**field LA**) in the records in the CC's consolidated database.

Example

change the line:

```
E/7  LA
```

to:

```
E/7  'LA Fr'
```

2 Sending Data to the Coordinating Centre

To send completed catalogue records to the CC, perform the following steps:

- Using the MIBIS database, in the Search menu, select the records to be sent to the CC. These are the records with Record status (**field RSTAT**) set to N. Use the following keystrokes:

[F8], EXCHANGE, [enter], N, [enter]

- Write the file to a diskette (drive A: is assumed), using the following keystrokes:

*Report, Sort, REC, [enter], Format, EXCHANGE, [enter], Write,
A:EXCHANGE.TXT, [enter]*

The sort keystrokes, *Sort, REC, [enter]*, are optional, but, if used, will ensure that the records are output in record number order.

This procedure will create a file on diskette called EXCHANGE.TXT.

Note 1 Data has not been entered in the Record status (**field RSTAT**) in the sample database.

Note 2 The Record status (**field RSTAT**) should be set to S after the report is produced. See **Section IX: Changing the contents of the status fields** for details.

3 Special Consideration

When the coordinating centre (CC) receives records from a participating centre, INMAGIC cannot determine what values belong in fields Record number of Parent (**field RPRN**), Record number(s) of part(s) (**field RPART**), or Record number(s) of other language version(s) (**field ROLAN**). As well, INMAGIC cannot determine whether the related record (e.g., the record describing the parent) is included in the records sent to the CC. For example, if CODESRIA's record 57 contains the value 56 in RPRN, INMAGIC cannot determine if CODESRIA's record 56 is included in the CC's database. Similarly, INMAGIC also cannot change the value in this field in record 57 to CODESRIA56. The INMAGIC implementation avoids the difficulty by excluding **fields RPRN, RPART, and ROLAN** from the EXCHANGE report.

IX CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS

After the current awareness bulletin or printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, the Processing status (**field PSTAT**) should be changed from LIST to CAT. Similarly, after records have been sent to the CC for the network, the Record status (**field RSTAT**) should be changed from N to S.

INMAGIC provides a modify option in the Search menu to enable one to readily make the same change in one field in several records. Therefore, to change the Processing status from LIST to CAT, or the Record status from N to S, enter the following keystrokes from the Search menu:

ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

Required change in status	Search menu keystrokes
Processing status to CAT	<i>[F8], STATUS, [enter], LIST, [enter], Modify, PSTAT, [enter], A, [enter], [enter], CAT, [enter], [F2], Y, [enter]</i>
Record status to S	<i>[F8], STATUS, [enter], [tab], N, [enter], Modify, RSTAT, [enter], A, [enter], [enter], S, [enter], [F2], Y, [enter]</i>

The database is now updated, with the appropriate status field changed.

X INDEXING

The rules for the indexing of data are defined with the fields in the data structures for the databases MIBIS, MIBIS2, and TITLC. INMAGIC requires the retrieval key field (**REC** in this case) to be indexed as a complete term. It also requires that any fields that are to be used as sort fields be indexed, when the sort is to be performed in the Auxiliary menu. For this reason, the following fields are indexed in MIBIS2, from which the printed bibliographic indexes are produced:

Field label	Field name	Description	Indexing
REC		Record number	T 2
T	TITLE	Title	T 5
PT	PTITLE	Parallel title(s)	T 5
AU	AUTHOR	Author(s)	T 7
CAU	CAUTHOR	Corporate author(s)	T 5
AF	AFFIL	Affiliation	T 5
IN	OTHINST	Other associated institution(s)	T 5
PDES		Primary descriptors	T 5
GDES		Geographic descriptors	T 5
SUB		Broad subject heading	T 5

Similarly, fields **REC**, **TITLE**, and **PTITLE** are indexed in the TITLC database, which is used to print the title catalogue.

The indexing techniques used may be changed if appropriate. The choice of indexing techniques is based on the following considerations:

- Date fields are normally indexed using the date sort (sort 4) in INMAGIC. This format is not suitable for dates in ISO format, because sort 4 requires that the month be expressed as a word or abbreviation (March or Mar). Sort 3, which treats numbers as characters, is used instead.
- Fields with simple values (usually one word), such as status fields, are indexed using sort 2. This sort was chosen over sort 1 or sort 5 so that a code with the same value as a leading article would not be ignored, e.g., the value AN in field **CNTRY**. Spaces and all punctuation are ignored.
- Some fields are indexed using sort 5. This sort ignores some leading articles, and treats all punctuation and/or single or multiple spaces as a single space.
- The Record number (field **REC**) is indexed using sort 2. This allows for the numeric sequencing of data if a sort is performed using this field.
- Project number(s) (field **PRJNO**) and Document number(s) (field **DOC**) are indexed using sort 6. This technique indexes the term exactly as it is entered. Care must be taken, therefore, when

searching these fields to enter the term exactly as it is stored in the field, with identical punctuation and upper-case letters entered as such. In a command-line search, the field must also be entered between quotes, for example:

```
GET DOC = 'LC/CAR/G. 126'
```

- The choice of term or keyword indexing is based on normal considerations for how the data is to be retrieved, and matches as best as possible the inversion techniques used with MICRO-ISIS. However, discrepancies occur because, in MICRO-ISIS, in some fields, only selected subfields are inverted. Because the data from the subfields are usually combined when kept in INMAGIC, such selectivity is not possible.

XI SEARCHING

Some changes in the handling of data in INMAGIC from the way defined in the **Field-by-Field Guide** require special caution when searches are requested in the Search menu. For example, the Personal author(s) (**field AUTHOR**) in INMAGIC are entered along with their role. Therefore, to search for a particular author, a truncated search is required in the user search menu. Enter * after the author's name when formulating a search, such as:

Jelliffe, D.B.*

or

Jelliffe*

XII LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

The files related to the INMAGIC implementation, which are kept in the INMAGIC directory of the diskette, are indicated below.

MIBIS database

data structure MIBIS.STR

database files MIBIS.DIC, MIBIS.DAT, MIBIS.DTM, MIBIS.DCM, MIBIS.DQM

MIBIS2 database

data structure MIBIS2.STR

database files MIBIS2.DIC, MIBIS2.DAT, MIBIS2.DTM, MIBIS2.DCM, MIBIS2.DQM

E-MIBIS2 database

database files E-MIBIS2.DIC, E-MIBIS2.DAT, E-MIBIS2.DTM, E-MIBIS2.DCM,
E-MIBIS2.DQM

TITLC database

data structure TITLC.STR

database files TITLC.DIC, TITLC.DAT, TITLC.DTM, TITLC.DCM, TITLC.DQM

E-TITLC database

database files E-TITLC.DIC, E-TITLC.DAT, E-TITLC.DTM, E-TITLC.DCM,
E-TITLC.DQM

Validation lookup tables

<i>bibliographic level</i>	LEVEL.VAL
<i>country codes</i>	COUNTRY.VAL
<i>language codes</i>	LANGUAGE.VAL
<i>broad subject headings</i>	SUBJECT.VAL
<i>record status</i>	RECSTAT.VAL
<i>processing status</i>	PROCSTAT.VAL
<i>type of material</i>	MTYPE.VAL
<i>acquisition type</i>	ATYPE.VAL

User search menus

<i>default search menu</i>	MIBIS.SMU
<i>for author catalogue</i>	AUTHC.SMU
<i>for title catalogue</i>	TITLC.SMU
<i>for corporate author catalogue</i>	CORPC.SMU
<i>for meeting catalogue</i>	MEETC.SMU
<i>for current awareness bulletin</i>	CAB.SMU
<i>for index reports</i>	RENUMBER.SMU
<i>for exchanging records</i>	EXCHANGE.SMU
<i>for purchase orders</i>	ORDER.SMU
<i>for claims for overdue orders</i>	CLAIM.SMU
<i>to change status fields</i>	STATUS.SMU

Reports for MIBIS

<i>screen output</i>	M.FMO
<i>screen output with abstract</i>	MA.FMO
<i>author catalogue</i>	AUTHC.FMO
<i>corporate author catalogue</i>	CORPC.FMO
<i>meeting catalogue</i>	MEETC.FMO
<i>current awareness bulletin</i>	CAB.FMO
<i>purchase order</i>	ORDER.FMO
<i>claims</i>	CLAIM.FMO

Specialized reports for MIBIS

<i>title catalogue (select records for TITLC database)</i>	TITLC1.FMO
<i>resequence (for index reports)</i>	RENUMBER.FMO
<i>exchange records in a network</i>	EXCHANGE.FMO

Report for TITLC

<i>title catalogue</i>	TITLC2.FMO
------------------------	------------

Reports for MIBIS2

<i>main bibliographic index</i>	MAINI.FMO
<i>author index</i>	AUTHI.FMO
<i>title index</i>	TITLI.FMO
<i>corporate body index</i>	CORPI.FMO
<i>subject index</i>	SUBJI.FMO
<i>geographic index</i>	GEOGI.FMO

AACR2 4, 7, 131, 133, 134, 152

Abbreviations

- acquisition notes 129
- collation 74
- edition statement 65
- meeting numbers 63
- monographic series part 80
- part statement 76
- provinces 198
- role 50, 100
- states 198

Abstract (field 310) 110, 111

Abstracts bulletins *see* Printed bibliographic indexes

Accession number(s) (field 413) 117

Accompanying material 85

Acquisition notes (field 517) 129

Acquisition type (field 500) 120

Acquisitions 11, 120-129, 183, 184

Acronyms

- corporate bodies 156, 199-205
- definition 215

Additions to corporate body names 157

Affiliation (field 112) 55-57

African names 137-142

Analytics 7, 8

- definition 28, 215

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules *see* AACR2

Any tables 171

- definition 215

Arabic names 142, 143

Articles *see* Initial articles

Asian names 143-147

Audiovisual material 74, 75

Author catalogues *see* Printed catalogues — author

Author indexes *see* Printed bibliographic indexes — author

Authority files 10

- computerized 149
 - see also* Authority records
- computerized — advantages 10
- corporate name *see* Corporate Name Authority File
- definition 215
- manual 11, 52, 56, 79, 92, 95, 148, 174
- personal author *see* Personal name authority file
- serial title *see* Serials Authority File
- subject 108, 112
 - see also* Thesauri
- supplier *see* Supplier authority file

Authority record date (field 998 of authority records) 150, 176, 184

- Authority record notes (field 997 of authority records)** 150, 176, 184
- Authority records 10, 11
- MICRO-ISIS 10, 16, 130, 240
- see also** Corporate name authority records; Serials authority records; Supplier authority records
- Automated authority files **see** Authority files — computerized; Authority records
- Availability (field 162)** 90, 91
- Bibliographic indexes **see** Printed bibliographic indexes
- Bibliographic level (field 007)** 28, 29
- Bibliographic level — parent (field 008)** 30
- Bibliographic levels 7-9, 28-30
- definition 215
- Bibliographic records
- definition 215
- Bibliography 219-221
- Boolean operators 171, 172
- Broad subject heading (field 320)** 112
- Broader terms 166, 173
- definition 215
- Call number (field 411)** 115
- Capitalization
- of corporate body names 164
- of meeting names 62
- of project titles 84
- of serial titles 79, 92, 178
- of titles 40
- Cartographic material 74
- Catalogues **see** Printed catalogues
- CCF 4, 6
- correspondence with present manual 210, 213
- CDS-PASCAL 242
- format exits 248, 249
- limitation 54, 57, 61, 102, 249, 252, 255, 262, 263
- see also** CHANGE program; CORP program; RENUMB program; REPORT program; SERIAL program
- CDS/ISIS (Mini-Micro Version) **see** MICRO-ISIS
- CHANGE program 113, 240, 260
- Choice of language **see** Language of analysis; **Language of analysis (field 020)**
- Cities **see** Place names
- Claims for overdue orders 183, 310, 311
- INMAGIC 334, 335
- MICRO-ISIS 257, 258
- Classification schemes 115
- Classified material **see** Restricted material
- Codes **see** Country codes; Currency codes; Language codes; **Processing status (field 400); Record status (field 003)**
- Collation (M/C) (field 130)** 73-75
- Collections 7, 8
- definition 28, 216

INDEX

- Common Communication Format **see** CCF
- Compilers 50, 99, 100
- Computer hardware **see** Hardware
- Computer software **see** Software
- Computerized authority files **see** Authority files — computerized; Authority records
- Conferences **see** Meetings
- Congresses **see** Meetings
- Cooperative information systems **see** Information networks
- CORP program 151, 255, 256
- Corporate author catalogues **see** Printed catalogues — corporate author
- Corporate author(s) (field 111)** 51-54
- Corporate author(s) — parent (field 211)** 101, 102
- Corporate bodies 7, 11
 - definition 148, 216
 - name changes 156
 - rules 152-164
 - rules, compared with AACR2 153
- Corporate body (field 901 of corporate name authority records)** 150
- Corporate body indexes **see** Printed bibliographic indexes — corporate body
- Corporate Name Authority File 11, 52, 53, 56, 57, 59, 60, 102
 - printed lists 151, 152, 255, 312-315
 - rules 148-164
- Corporate name authority records 53, 57, 60, 102, 130, 149-151, 158, 163
 - list of fields 150
- Country codes 31, 52, 56, 59, 63, 68, 163, 195-197
- Country of origin (field 009)** 31
- Cross references
 - definition 216
 - in computerized authority files 150, 176
 - in manual authority files 131, 148, 174, 178, 180
- Currency codes 90, 128
- Current awareness bulletins 112, 292-297
 - INMAGIC 330, 331
 - MICRO-ISIS 251, 252
- Data entry
 - INMAGIC 327, 328
 - MICRO-ISIS 20, 21, 23, 24, 36, 40, 130, 245-247
- Data exchange **see** Information exchange
- Database design 3, 11, 12
- Databases
 - definition 216
- Date claimed (field 511)** 122
- Date of meeting 63, 64
- Date of publication/issue — free form (field 122)** 69, 70
- Date of publication/issue — ISO form (field 123)** 71, 72
- Date ordered (field 510)** 121
- Date received (field 512)** 123
- Date record changed (field 006)** 27

- Date record entered (field 005)** 26
- Descriptors 91, 103-109, 165-173
 definition 216
 see also **Geographic descriptors (field 302); Local descriptors (field 303); Primary descriptors (field 300); Proposed descriptors (field 304); Secondary descriptors (field 301)**
- Development Sciences Information System **see** DEVSIS
- DEVSIS 4
- Dimensions 75
- Display formats
 MICRO-ISIS 10, 42, 54, 57, 61, 68, 72, 75, 81, 83, 87, 94, 95, 102, 104, 115, 127, 183, 184, 185, 247-250, 252, 254, 258
- Displaying information on your screen
 INMAGIC 328, 329
 MICRO-ISIS 247, 248
- Dissertations **see** Theses
- Document number(s) (field 161)** 88, 89
- Documentalist(s) (field 430)** 119
- Edition (field 120)** 65
- Editors 50, 99, 100
- Essential fields 19
- European names 132-135
- Exchanging information **see** Information exchange
- Field Select table **see** Inversion FST; Reformatting FST
- Field tags
 definition 216
- Fields
 definition 216
 list of 13
 see also Essential fields; Mandatory fields; Repeatable fields; Subfielded fields
- Former name(s) (field 904 of corporate name authority records)** 150
- Former title(s) (field 915 of serials authority records)** 176
- Free text searching 170, 216
- FST **see** Inversion FST; Reformatting FST
- Geographic codes **see** Country codes
- Geographic descriptors (field 302)** 107
- Geographic indexes **see** Printed bibliographic indexes — geographic
- Global modification
 INMAGIC 337, 338
 MICRO-ISIS 113, 240, 260
- Glossary 215-217
- Government bodies 159-162
 see also Names of governments
- Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems* 10, 152
- Hardware
 requirements for MICRO-ISIS 5
- Headings 7
 definition 216
- Heurisko 263, 264

- Hyphenated words 40, 164
- IDIN 3, 11
- IFLA 131, 188
- Illustrators 99
- Indexes *see* Printed bibliographic indexes
- Indexing *see* Subject indexing
- Indexing techniques for inversion
 - INMAGIC 321, 338, 339
 - MICRO-ISIS 13, 150
- Indicators 210
- Information exchange 4-6, 11
 - using INMAGIC 336, 337
 - using MICRO-ISIS 23, 24, 36, 240, 258-260
- Information networks 4, 11, 23-25, 240
- Information retrieval 71, 72, 84, 91, 103-105, 170-173, 181
- Information systems
 - definition 216
 - see also* Multilingual information systems; Stand-alone information systems; Unilingual information systems
- Initial articles
 - in serial titles 178
 - INMAGIC 319, 338
 - MICRO-ISIS 40, 41, 92, 93
 - see also* Triangular brackets
- Initials (corporate bodies) *see* Acronyms — corporate bodies
- INMAGIC 5, 318-340
 - see also* Claims for overdue orders — INMAGIC; Current awareness bulletins — INMAGIC; Data entry — INMAGIC; Displaying information on your screen — INMAGIC; Global modification — INMAGIC; Indexing techniques for inversion — INMAGIC; Information exchange — INMAGIC; Initial articles — INMAGIC; Installation — INMAGIC; MIBIS database — INMAGIC; Multilingual information systems — INMAGIC; Printed bibliographic indexes — INMAGIC; Printed catalogues — INMAGIC; Purchase orders — INMAGIC; Report generation — INMAGIC; Resequencing data — INMAGIC; Sample implementation — INMAGIC; Unilingual information systems — INMAGIC; Validation — INMAGIC
- Input sheets 19
 - completed — samples 222
 - see also* Data entry — MICRO-ISIS
- Installation
 - INMAGIC 320, 321
 - MICRO-ISIS 242, 243
- Institutions *see* Corporate bodies
- International Development Information Network *see* IDIN
- International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions *see* IFLA
- International Serials Data System *see* ISDS
- International Standard Bibliographic Description *see* ISBD
- Inversion FST 41, 43, 53, 57, 61, 104, 244, 261-263
- Inverted files
 - corporate names 53, 57, 61

- definition 216
- descriptors 104
- MICRO-ISIS 170
- title 41
- see also Indexing techniques for inversion
- ISBD 7
- ISBN(s) (field 160)** 86, 87
- ISDS 177
- ISO standards see Standards
- ISSN 95
- ISSN (field 201)** 95, 96
- ISSN (field 912 of serials authority records)** 176
- Items
 - definition 216
- Joint bodies 159
- Key title 177
- Language
 - corporate body name 51, 101, 153-155
 - meeting name 62
 - name of government 160, 161
 - place name 181
 - serial title 177, 180
 - title 39, 97
- Language codes 187
- Language of analysis 9, 35, 36, 39, 44, 46-48, 51, 55, 58, 62, 63, 65, 70, 73, 74, 85, 97, 101, 110
 - definition 217
 - see also Languages of the system
- Language of analysis (field 020)** 35, 36
- Language(s) of summaries (field 022)** 38
- Language(s) of text (field 021)** 37
- Languages of the system 9, 35, 154, 155, 181
- Later name(s) (field 905 of corporate name authority records)** 150
- Later title(s) (field 916 of serials authority records)** 176
- Leading articles see Initial articles
- Local descriptors (field 303)** 108
- Location(s) (field 410)** 114
- Loose-leaf publications 73
- Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development* 10, 165
- Main bibliographic indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — main
- Main entry headings 7
- Mandatory fields 6, 19
- Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems* 3, 131
 - comparison with present manual 206-209
- Maps see Cartographic material
- Master File Number 22, 24, 32-34
- Maximum length of field
 - definition 20
- Meeting catalogues see Printed catalogues — meeting

Meeting(s) (field 114) 62-64

Meetings 62, 153

MFN *see* Master File Number

MIBIS database

INMAGIC 321-327

MICRO-ISIS 243-245

MICRO-ISIS 4-6, 241-269

see also Authority records — MICRO-ISIS; Claims for overdue orders — MICRO-ISIS; Current awareness bulletins — MICRO-ISIS; Data entry — MICRO-ISIS; Display formats — MICRO-ISIS; Displaying information on your screen — MICRO-ISIS; Global modification — MICRO-ISIS; Hardware — requirements for MICRO-ISIS; Indexing techniques for inversion — MICRO-ISIS; Information exchange — using MICRO-ISIS; Initial articles — MICRO-ISIS; Installation — MICRO-ISIS; Inverted files — MICRO-ISIS; MIBIS database — MICRO-ISIS; Multilingual information systems — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic indexes — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic Indexes — MICRO-ISIS; Printed catalogues — MICRO-ISIS; Purchase orders — MICRO-ISIS; Repeatable fields — MICRO-ISIS; Report generation — MICRO-ISIS; Resequencing data — MICRO-ISIS; Sample implementation — MICRO-ISIS; Subfield delimiters — in MICRO-ISIS; Unilingual information systems — MICRO-ISIS

Mini-Micro CDS/ISIS *see* MICRO-ISIS

Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (Version 2.3) 172, 184

MINISIS 4

Monographic series 9, 11, 78

definition 217

Monographic series (field 140) 78-81

Monographic series indexes *see* Printed bibliographic indexes — monographic series

Monographs 7, 8

definition 28, 217

Multilingual information systems 9, 35, 155, 160, 172, 181

INMAGIC 336

MICRO-ISIS 247, 259, 260

Multilingual networks 11, 12

see also Information networks

Multilingual retrieval

see also Information retrieval

Names of governments 12, 52, 56, 59, 160, 161

in the language of the government 188-193

Names of territorial authorities *see* Names of governments

Narrower terms 166, 173

definition 217

Networks *see* Information networks; Multilingual networks

Notes (field 150) 85

Number of copies (field 412) 116

Number of copies ordered (field 513) 124

OECD 3, 10, 172

On-line searching *see* Information retrieval

Optional fields 12, 19

Optional rules 19, 35, 42, 80, 132-134, 154, 155, 160, 161, 181

- Optional subfields 11, 51, 55, 58, 62, 64, 75, 78, 92, 101
- Order forms *see* Purchase orders
- Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development *see* OECD
- Other associated institution(s) (field 113)** 58-61
- Other language version(s) (field 903 of corporate name authority records)** 150
- Other language versions of the item 34
- Other language versions of the title 39, 42
- Pagination 73, 76, 77, 92
- Parallel title(s) (field 101)** 42, 43
- Parallel titles
 - definition 217
- Parent items 7, 30, 32, 97, 99, 101
- Part statement (field 131)** 76, 77
- Participating centre acronym (field 001)** 23
- Participating centre record number (field 002)** 24
- PASCAL *see* CDS-PASCAL
- Periodicals *see* Serials
- Periods *see* Punctuation
- Personal author(s) (field 110)** 49, 50
- Personal author(s) — parent (field 210)** 99, 100
- Personal authors 99
 - rules 131-147
- Personal name authority file 49, 99, 131
- Place names 12, 163
 - rules 181
- Portuguese names 135
- Price (field 516)** 128
- Primary descriptors (field 300)** 103-105
- Print formats *see* Display formats
- Printed bibliographic indexes
 - author 301
 - corporate body 303
 - geographic 169, 307
 - INMAGIC 331-334
 - main 298-300
 - MICRO-ISIS 253-255, 298-307
 - monographic series 80
 - place 181
 - subject 103, 169, 304-306
 - title 302
- Printed catalogues
 - author 270-276
 - corporate author 285-288
 - INMAGIC 330, 331
 - meeting 289-291
 - MICRO-ISIS 251, 252, 270-291
 - title 277-284

INDEX

- Printed outputs *see* Claims for overdue orders; Corporate Name Authority File — printed lists;
Current awareness bulletins; Display formats — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic indexes;
Printed catalogues; Purchase orders; Serials Authority File — printed lists; Supplier authority
file — printed lists
- Processing status (field 400)** 113
- Programs *see* CDS-PASCAL; CHANGE program; CORP program; RENUMB program; REPORT
program; SERIAL program
- Project numbers 84
- Project(s) (field 142)** 84
- Proposed descriptors (field 304)** 109
- Provinces
 abbreviations 198
 as names of governments 160, 161
 in place names 182
- Publisher (field 121)** 66-68
- Punctuation
 before monographic series part 81
 before parallel titles 42
 before publisher 68
 between descriptor fields 104
 in collation 74, 75
 in corporate body names 52, 164
 in ISBN 87
 in meeting names 63
 in monographic series 80
 in notes 85, 129
 in part statement 77
 in project numbers 84
 in serial titles 80, 92
 in thesis field 83
 in titles 40
- Purchase orders 126, 183-185, 308, 309
 INMAGIC 334, 335
 MICRO-ISIS 257, 258
- Record number of parent (field 010)** 32
- Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012)** 34
- Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011)** 33
- Record status (field 003)** 25
- Record type (field 999)** 130, 150, 176, 184
- Reformatting FST 23, 24, 36, 210, 240, 244, 254, 258-260
- Related terms 166, 173
- RENUMB program 253
- Repeatable fields
 definition 19, 217
 in MICRO-ISIS 20
- Report generation
 INMAGIC 329-335
 MICRO-ISIS 250-258

- Report numbers **see** **Document number(s) (field 161)**
- REPORT program 251, 252, 254, 257
- Reports **see** Claims for overdue orders; Corporate Name Authority File — printed lists; Current awareness bulletins; Printed bibliographic indexes; Printed catalogues; Purchase orders; Serials Authority File — printed lists; Supplier authority file — printed lists
- Reprints 73, 78, 85
- Requester(s) (field 514)** 125
- Resequencing data
 INMAGIC 331, 332
 MICRO-ISIS 253, 254
- Restricted material 90
- Retrieval **see** Information retrieval
- Right truncation 171
- Role
 institution 58-60
 personal author 49, 50, 100
- Romanization **see** Transliteration
- SAF **see** Serials Authority File
- Sample implementation
 INMAGIC 318-340
 MICRO-ISIS 241-317
- Sample input sheets 17, 18
 completed 222-239
- Sample printed outputs 269-317
- Searching **see** Information retrieval
- Secondary descriptors (field 301)** 106
- See also other language edition(s) (field 914 of serials authority records)** 176
- See also references **see** Cross references
- See reference(s) (field 902 of corporate name authority records)** 150
- See reference(s) (field 913 of serials authority records)** 176
- See references **see** Cross references
- Segments 210
- Seminars **see** Meetings
- SERIAL program 177, 256
- Serial title (field 911 of serials authority records)** 176
- Serial titles
 rules 177-180
- Serials 8, 9, 92
 definition 28, 174, 217
 see also Monographic series; **Monographic series (field 140)**; Serial titles; **Title of serial (field 200)**
- Serials Authority File 11, 78-81, 92-96
 printed lists 177, 256, 316
 rules 175-180
- Serials authority records 80, 93-95, 130, 175
 list of fields 176
- Series **see** Monographic series; **Monographic series (field 140)**
- Shelf numbers 115

Software

requirements for a bibliographic system 5

see also CDS-PASCAL; INMAGIC; MICRO-ISIS; MINISIS

Spanish names 136, 137

Stand-alone information systems 11, 12, 160

Standards

bibliographic information interchange 5

calendar dates 64, 71

country codes 195

currency codes 90

language codes 187

province codes 198

transliteration 40, 154

Statement of responsibility 7

States

abbreviations 198

as names of governments 160, 161

in place names 182

Status codes **see** **Processing status (field 400); Record status (field 003)**

Subfield delimiters

in MICRO-ISIS 20

Subfielded fields

definition 20, 218

Subfields

definition 217

Subject classification 115

Subject headings **see** **Broad subject heading (field 320); Printed bibliographic indexes — subject**

Subject indexes **see** **Printed bibliographic indexes — subject**

Subject indexing 10, 165-169

see also Descriptors

Subject retrieval **see** Information retrieval

Subordinate bodies 52, 56, 59, 153, 157, 158

definition 218

Supplier (field 515) 126, 127

Supplier authority code (field 921 of supplier authority records) 184

Supplier authority file 11, 126

printed lists 256, 317

Supplier authority records 127, 130, 184

list of fields 184

Supplier name and address (field 922 of supplier authority records) 184

Territorial authorities **see** Names of governments

Thesauri 10, 11, 103, 106, 107, 115, 165, 172

see also *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*

Theses 69, 82

Thesis (field 141) 82, 83

Title (field 100) 39-41

Title catalogues **see** Printed catalogues — title

- Title indexes *see* Printed bibliographic indexes — title
- Title of parent (M/C) (field 202)** 97, 98
- Title of serial (field 200)** 92-94
- Top terms 166
- Towns *see* Place names
- Translated title — English (field 102)** 44, 45
- Translated title — French (field 103)** 46
- Translated title — other language (field 105)** 48
- Translated title — Spanish (field 104)** 47
- Translations 85
- Translators 99
- Transliteration
- of corporate body names 154
 - of titles 40
 - standards for 40
- Triangular brackets 40, 41, 92, 93, 104, 108, 109, 179, 255
- Type of material (field 420)** 118
- Unilingual information systems 9, 35, 154, 160, 181
- INMAGIC 336
 - MICRO-ISIS 259, 260
- Validation
- INMAGIC 328
- Variant forms of name *see* Cross references
- Volume numbers 73, 76, 80, 92
- Worksheets *see* Data entry — MICRO-ISIS; Input sheets
- Workshops *see* Meetings

Abstract This publication provides guidelines for creating and maintaining a bibliographic information system using microcomputers. It is a generalized manual for users ranging from those managing stand-alone systems in libraries or documentation centres to participants in information networks. The manual contains a database design using Mini-micro CDS/ISIS as the example software. The main part is a field-by-field guide with rules for the selection and entry of data in the proposed record structure. Numerous annexes include guidelines for building corporate name and serials authority files, guidelines for subject analysis and retrieval, a guide for acquisitions applications, data exchange procedures in a network, a table showing the correspondence with the Common Communication Format, and details on implementations using Mini-micro CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC-PLUS, with sample outputs. A diskette containing the Mini-micro CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC-PLUS record structures and supporting files, as well as a sample database, is included.

Résumé Ce document contient des lignes directrices pour la création et l'entretien d'un système d'information bibliographique sur micro-ordinateur. C'est un manuel général destiné tant à l'utilisateur gérant un système individuel en bibliothèque ou un centre de documentation qu'au membre d'un réseau d'information. Il contient un modèle de base de données avec logiciel Mini-micro CDS/ISIS. Le corps du document est un guide par zone contenant des règles de sélection et d'entrée des données dans la structure d'enregistrement proposée. Dans les annexes, on trouve des directives pour constituer des fichiers d'autorité des noms de collectivités et des périodiques, des grandes lignes à suivre pour l'analyse par sujet et le repérage, un système d'acquisition, des procédés d'échange des données en réseau, un tableau montrant la correspondance avec le format commun de communication et des détails sur les applications du Mini-micro CDS/ISIS et de INMAGIC-PLUS, ainsi que des échantillons de sorties. La disquette insérée dans le guide comporte les structures d'enregistrement Mini-micro CDS/ISIS et INMAGIC-PLUS et leurs fichiers d'accompagnement, de même qu'un modèle de base de données.

Resumen Esta publicación proporciona orientación para la creación y mantenimiento de un sistema de información bibliográfica por medio del uso de microcomputadores. Se trata de un manual general para usuarios que administran sistemas autónomos en bibliotecas o en centros de documentación como también para los participantes en redes de información. El manual contiene el diseño de una base de datos que utiliza Mini-micro CDS/ISIS como software a manera de ejemplo. La parte principal es una guía por campos con reglas para la selección e ingreso de datos en la estructura propuesta del registro. Varios anexos incluyen guías para construir archivos de autoridad para nombres de empresas y para títulos de publicaciones periódicas, guías para análisis y búsqueda, una guía para el empleo de adquisiciones, procedimientos de intercambio de información en una red, una tabla que indica la correspondencia con el Formato de Comunicación Común (CCF) y los detalles sobre su implementación usando Mini-micro CDS/ISIS e INMAGIC-PLUS, con muestreo de resultados. Se incluye un disquete que contiene las estructuras de registro de Mini-micro CDS/ISIS y de INMAGIC-PLUS. Asimismo, se incluyen archivos de apoyo y una muestra de una base de datos.

About the Institution

The International Development Research Centre (IDRC) is a public corporation created by the Parliament of Canada in 1970 to support technical and policy research to help meet the needs of developing countries. The Centre is active in the fields of environment and natural resources, social sciences, health sciences, and information sciences and systems. Regional offices are located in Africa, Asia, Latin America, and the Middle East.

About the Publisher

IDRC BOOKS publishes research results and scholarly studies on global and regional issues related to sustainable and equitable development. As a specialist in development literature, IDRC BOOKS contributes to the body of knowledge on these issues to further the cause of global understanding and equity. IDRC publications are sold through its head office in Ottawa, Canada, as well as by IDRC's agents and distributors around the world.

The MIBIS Manual — Second Edition

Preparing records in microcomputer-based bibliographic information systems

"A great deal of practical experience has gone into the compilation of this manual, which deserves to become a standard work in its field."

Peter Vickers, The Information Partnership, UK
in *Program: Automated Library and Information Systems*

The MIBIS Manual provides detailed instructions on how to build and run a bibliographic information system using a personal computer. Using UNESCO's CDS/ISIS as the example software, it offers a proven model and shows how that model can be adapted for INMAGIC Plus.

Using *The MIBIS Manual*, libraries and documentation centres can tailor their bibliographic information system to the needs of their users and the nature of their collection, while ensuring that the system they create conforms to major international standards.

With information on:

- ▶ Creating a bilingual or multilingual system
- ▶ Running the system within a network and using networks to share bibliographic records with other libraries
- ▶ Creating personal and corporate name authority files
- ▶ Managing acquisitions fields

This new, fully updated edition incorporates the latest features of CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC Plus, a new search interface for CDS/ISIS, and an improved display format for bibliographic records.



Included with this volume: A 3.5-inch disk containing a sample database, record structures, and supporting files for UNESCO's CDS/ISIS as well as INMAGIC Plus.

